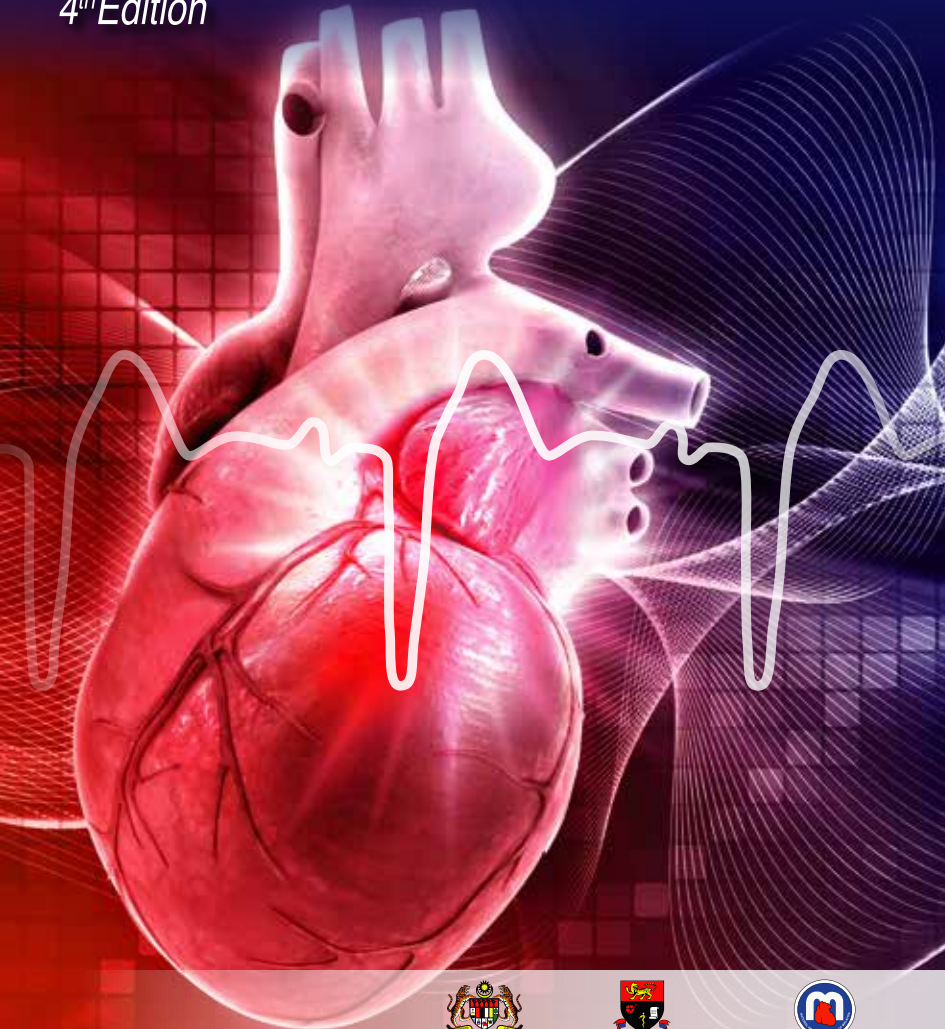


CLINICAL PRACTICE GUIDELINES

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition



Ministry of Health Malaysia



Academy of Medicine Malaysia



National Heart Association of Malaysia

PUBLISHED BY:

National Heart Association of Malaysia

D-13A-06, Menara SUEZCAP 1, KL Gateway
No.2 Jalan Kerinchi, Gerbang Kerinchi Lestari
59200 Kuala Lumpur

eISBN 978-967-11794-4-4

COPYRIGHT

The owners of this publication are the National Heart Association of Malaysia (NHAM) and the Academy of Medicine Malaysia. The content in this document may be produced in any number of copies and in any format or medium provided that a copyright acknowledgement to the owners is included and the content is not changed in any form or method, not sold and not used to promote or endorse any product or service. In addition, the content is not to be used in any inappropriate or misleading context.

STATEMENT OF INTENT

This clinical practice guidelines (CPG) is meant to be a guide for clinical practice, based on the best available evidence at the time of development. Adherence to these guidelines may not necessarily guarantee the best outcome in every case. Every healthcare provider is responsible for the management of his/her patient based on the clinical picture presented by the patient and the management options available locally.

PERIOD OF VALIDITY

This CPG was issued in 2019 and will be reviewed in 5 years or sooner if new evidence becomes available.

CPG Secretariat

c/o Health Technology Assessment Unit
Medical Development Division
Ministry of Health Malaysia
4th Floor, Block E1, Parcel E
62590, Putrajaya.

Electronic version available on the following website:

<http://www.moh.gov.my>

<http://www.acadamed.org.my>

This is an update to the Clinical Practice Guidelines on Heart Failure (published 2000, 2007 and 2014). It supersedes the previous CPGs on Heart Failure (2000, 2007, 2014).

MESSAGE FROM THE DIRECTOR GENERAL OF HEALTH

It gives me great pleasure to write a message for another Clinical Practice Guideline (CPG) on the Management of Heart Failure (HF), which is now in its fourth edition. The first CPG in HF was published in 2000 with revisions in 2007 and 2014.

Cardiovascular disease is an important cause of morbidity and mortality in Malaysia. HF, the end stage of most diseases of the heart, is a common medical problem encountered in clinical practice and is an important cause of hospital admissions and readmissions. It is also an important cause of hospital expenditure.

Since the last CPG in 2014 the treatment modalities for the management of HF has expanded extensively. There have been many significant developments in the use of drugs and devices. These guideline-changing data have been incorporated into this CPG, taking into account our local health resources.

A CPG is only successful if it is accepted and implemented. I encourage all healthcare providers involved in the management of HF in children and adults to adopt these recommendations in your practice.

Finally, I would like to congratulate the Chairman and members of the Expert Committee for developing such a comprehensive CPG. Thanks to you, as well as the External Reviewers, for your time and effort.

A handwritten signature in black ink, which appears to read 'Noor Hisham Abdullah'. The signature is fluid and cursive, with a long horizontal stroke at the end.

Datuk Dr Noor Hisham Abdullah
Director-General of Health Malaysia

MEMBERS OF THE EXPERT PANEL

CHAIRPERSON:

Dr. Jeyamalar Rajadurai *Consultant Cardiologist,
Subang Jaya Medical Centre*

MEMBERS (in alphabetical order)

Dr. Azmee Mohd Ghazi *Consultant Cardiologist,
Institut Jantung Negara*

Dr. Cham Yee Ling *Consultant Cardiologist,
Sarawak Heart Centre*

Dr. David Chew Soon Ping *Consultant Cardiologist,
Cardiac Vascular Sentral, Kuala Lumpur*

Dr. Effarezan Abdul Rahman *Consultant Cardiologist,
KPJ Damansara Specialist Hospital*

Dr. Haifa Abdul Latiff *Consultant Paediatric Cardiologist,
Institut Jantung Negara*

Dr. Izwan Effendy Ismail *Family Medicine Specialist,
Klinik Kesihatan Puchong*

Dr. Liew Houg Bang *Consultant Cardiologist,
Hospital Queen Elizabeth II*

Dr. Ma Soot Keng *Consultant Cardiologist and Electrophysiologist,
Loh Guan Lye Specialist Centre*

Dr. Mohd Nizam Mat Bah *Consultant Paediatric Cardiologist,
Hospital Sultanah Aminah*

Dr. Mohd Rahal Yusoff *Consultant Cardiologist & Specialist in Internal Medicine,
Columbia Asia Hospital Klang*

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

Ms. Nirmala Jagan

*Clinical Pharmacist,
Hospital Kuala Lumpur*

Dr. K. Sree Raman

*Consultant Physician
Chief Executive Officer,
NSCMH Medical Centre, Negeri Sembilan*

Dr. Sunita Bavanandan

*Consultant Nephrologist,
Hospital Kuala Lumpur*

Dr. Vengketeswara Rao Seetharaman

*Family Medicine Specialist,
Klinik Kesihatan Kalumpang, Selangor*

Dr. Wan Azman Wan Ahmad

*Consultant Cardiologist,
Pusat Perubatan Universiti Malaya*

EXTERNAL REVIEWERS

(in alphabetical Order)

Dr. Anwar Irawan Ruhani	<i>Consultant Cardiologist, Hospital Tengku Ampuan Afzan</i>
Dr. Aizai Aizai Azan Abdul Rahim	<i>Consultant Cardiologist, Institut Jantung Negara</i>
Dr. Gary Lee Chin Keong	<i>Consultant Cardiologist and Electrophysiologist, Hospital Serdang</i>
Dr. Geeta Kandavello	<i>Consultant Paediatric Cardiologist, Institut Jantung Negara</i>
Dr. Hizlinda Tohid	<i>Family Medicine Specialist, University Kebangsaan Malaysia</i>
Dr. Letchumanan Ramanathan	<i>Consultant Physician, Hospital Ipoh</i>
Dr. Lee Chuey Yan	<i>Consultant Cardiologist, Hospital Sultanah Aminah</i>
Dr. Martin Wong Ngie Leong	<i>Consultant Paediatric Cardiologist, Sarawak Heart Centre</i>
Dr. Noel Thomas Ross	<i>Consultant Physician, Hospital Kuala Lumpur</i>
Dr. Ong Loke Meng	<i>Consultant Nephrologist, Hospital Pulau Pinang</i>
Dr. Ong Mei Lin	<i>Consultant Cardiologist, Gleneagles Penang</i>
Dr. Rozita Zakaria	<i>Family Medicine Specialist, Klinik Kesihatan Putrajaya Presint 18</i>
Dr. Sahimi Mohamed	<i>Head of Clinical Section, Pharmacy Department Hospital Tengku Ampuan Afzan</i>
Dr. Saravanan Krishinan	<i>Consultant Cardiologist and Electrophysiologist, Hospital Sultanah Bahiyah</i>
Dr. Wong Kai Fatt	<i>General Practitioner, Klinik Tan, 96, Jalan Ipoh, Kuala Lumpur</i>

RATIONALE AND PROCESS OF GUIDELINES DEVELOPMENT

Cardiovascular disease (CVD) is an important cause of morbidity and mortality in Malaysia. Heart Failure (HF), the end stage of most diseases of the heart, is a common medical problem encountered in general practice and is an important cause of hospital admissions and readmissions. It is also an important cause of hospital expenditure. As the population ages, the prevalence of HF is expected to increase.

The 1st Clinical Practice Guidelines (CPG) in HF was published in 2000 with revisions in 2007 and 2014. Since then, there have been many new developments in this field. Thus the publication of this 4th edition is timely. This CPG proposes a structured multidisciplinary strategy for the seamless care of patients with HF between hospital and community care.

This CPG was drawn up by a committee appointed by the National Heart Association of Malaysia and Ministry of Health. It consists of a multidisciplinary team of cardiologists, nephrologists, family medicine specialists, general physicians and pharmacists from the government, private sectors and the public Universities. The external reviewers were also made up of a multidisciplinary team. Members of the public - patients and carers - however, were not included.

Objectives:

The objectives of this CPG are to:

- Update the current management of HF based on recent evidence with respect to:
 - Prevention
 - Diagnosis
 - Treatment – pharmacotherapy, device and surgical therapy
 - Rehabilitation
 - End of life and palliative care
- Recognise and manage HF in special populations:
 - Adult congenital heart disease
 - Geriatric population
 - Pregnant women
- Develop a structured multidisciplinary strategy for the management of patients with HF both in the primary and secondary care setting.

Process

The last CPG published in 2014 was used as a base. In addition to the previous clinical questions that needed to be updated, the Expert Panel formulated new questions that needed to be addressed. These clinical questions were then divided into sections and each member was assigned one or more topics.

A review of current medical literature on HF from 1st October 2013 (the date of the last CPG) till 31st August 2018 was performed. Literature search was carried out using the following electronic databases - PubMed and Cochrane Database of Systemic Reviews. The following MeSH terms or free text terms were used either singly or in combination:

"Heart Failure", "Congestive Cardiac Failure", "Acute Heart Failure", "Chronic Heart Failure", "Right Heart Failure", "Left Heart Failure" [MeSH], "Heart Failure Reduced Left Ventricular Function", "Heart Failure Preserved Left Ventricular Function" [MeSH], Acute decompensated heart failure, tachycardia-induced cardiomyopathy, heart failure mid-range, refractory heart failure, terminal heart failure, end stage heart failure, cardio-oncology.

The search was filtered to clinical trials and reviews, involving humans and published in the English language. The relevant articles were carefully selected from this huge list. In addition, the reference lists of all relevant articles retrieved were searched to identify further studies. Experts in the field were also contacted to obtain further information. International guidelines on HF - the American Heart Association / American College of Cardiology and European Society of Cardiology - were also studied. All literature retrieved were appraised by members of the Expert Panel and all statements and recommendations made were collectively agreed by the group. The grading of evidence and the level of recommendation used in this CPG was adapted from the American College of Cardiology / American Heart Association and the European Society of Cardiology (Table 1, Page 12).

After much discussion, the draft was then drawn up and submitted to the Technical Advisory Committee for Clinical Practice Guidelines, Ministry of Health Malaysia and key health personnel in the major hospitals of the Ministry of Health and the private sector for review and feedback.

Clinical Questions Addressed:

There were several topics and subtopics that were formulated addressing the diagnosis and management of HF.

For **diagnosis**: In a person presenting with shortness of breath:

- What features in the history and clinical examination would make one suspect this patient is having a HF?
- What diagnostic tests help confirm the clinical suspicion of HF with reasonable sensitivity and specificity?
 - ECG
 - Chest X-ray
 - Natriuretic peptides
 - Echocardiogram

For **therapy**, the topics and subtopics were formulated using the PICO method as follows:

P: Population - Persons with confirmed HF and:

- Reduced left ventricular (LV) function (LVEF < 40%) - Heart failure with reduced ejection fraction (HF_rEF) and:
 - Congested (Volume overload)
 - Hypotensive (Cold)
 - Combination of congestion and hypotension
 - ◆ Coronary artery disease (CAD)
 - ◆ Atrial fibrillation
 - ◆ Older persons
 - ◆ Persons with diabetes
 - ◆ Women
 - ◆ Chronic kidney disease
 - Not on renal replacement therapy
 - On renal replacement therapy
- Preserved LV function (LVEF > 50%) Heart failure with preserved ejection fraction (HF_pEF)
- Mid range LV function (LVEF: 40-50%) Heart failure with mid-range LVEF (HF_{mr}EF)

I: Intervention:

- Non-pharmacological therapy
- Pharmacological therapy:
 - ◆ Diuretics
 - ◆ Angiotensin Converting Enzyme Inhibitors (ACE-I)
 - ◆ Angiotensin Receptor Blockers (ARB)
 - ◆ β -blockers
 - ◆ Mineralocorticoid Antagonists (MRA)
 - ◆ Statins
 - ◆ Etc
- Surgery :
 - ◆ Valve surgery
 - ◆ Coronary artery bypass surgery
- Device therapy
 - ◆ Cardiac resynchronisation therapy
 - ◆ Catheter ablation
 - ◆ Pacemaker therapy

C: Comparison:

- Non-pharmacological therapy vs no non-pharmacological therapy
- Diuretics vs no diuretics
- ACE-I vs no ACE-I
- Etc

O: Outcome:

- Improvement in symptoms
- Reduce hospital readmissions for HF
- Reduction in Major Cardiovascular Disease Event Rate (myocardial infarction (MI), stroke, cardiovascular (CV) death)
- Reduction in all-cause mortality

Type of Question - Involves:

- Therapy drug therapy, surgery, device therapy
- Harm -
 - ◆ Worsening of symptoms and readmission rate
 - ◆ Increase in cardiovascular event rate (MI, HF, CV death)
 - ◆ Increase in bleeding risk and stroke rate
 - ◆ Adverse effects due to pharmacotherapy
- Prognosis - reduction in MI, HF, CV death and improvement in all-cause mortality

Type of Study

- Systematic review and meta-analysis
- Randomised controlled studies
- Cohort studies

Thus, there were numerous clinical questions formulated.

Example of some of these Clinical Questions:

- In a person with HF_rEF and congested (volume overload) will the use of diuretics lead to an improvement in symptoms, hospital readmission, cardiac event rate and/or all-cause mortality?
- In a person with HF_rEF and not congested (volume overload) will the use of diuretics lead to an improvement in symptoms, hospital readmission, cardiac event rate and/or all-cause mortality?
- In a person with HF_rEF and congested (volume overload) will the use of ACE-I lead to an improvement in symptoms, hospital readmission, cardiac event rate and/or all-cause mortality?
- In a person with HF_rEF and CAD, will coronary artery bypass surgery lead to an improvement in symptoms, hospital readmission, cardiac event rate and/or all-cause mortality?
- In a person with HF_pEF and congested (volume overload) will the use of ACE-I lead to an improvement in symptoms, hospital readmission, cardiac event rate and/or all-cause mortality?

Target Group:

This guideline is directed at all healthcare providers involved in the management of HF in children and adults.

Target Population:

It is developed to treat all individuals with and at risk of HF.

Period of Validity of the Guidelines:

These guidelines need to be revised at least every 5 years to keep abreast with recent developments and knowledge that is being learnt.

Applicability of the Guidelines and Resource Implications:

This guideline was developed taking into account our local health resources. Blood investigations, chest radiographs, ECGs and echocardiograms are common in almost all public health facilities. The drugs used to treat HF - diuretics, ACE-I, β -blockers have been approved for use in Malaysia and available in public hospitals as generics.

This guideline aims to educate health care professionals on strategies to optimise existing resources in the timely management of patients with HF.

Facilitators and Barriers:

The main barrier for successful implementation of this CPG is the lack of knowledge of healthcare providers in the:

- Diagnosis of HF.
- Management of HF - initial treatment and long term follow-up.
- Optimisation of therapy and when to refer to tertiary centres.

Implementation of the Guidelines:

The implementation of the recommendations of a CPG is part of good clinical governance. To ensure successful implementation of this CPG we suggest:

- Increasing public awareness of CVD and HF in general and educating them on the importance of seeking early medical attention.
- Continuous medical education and training of healthcare providers on the importance of appropriate management of patients with HF. This can be done by road shows, electronic media, and in-house training sessions.

Clinical audit by individual hospitals and units to ensure compliance using the suggested performance measures in Section 12, Page 115 and Appendix VI, pg 121.

Dr. Jeyamalar Rajadurai
Chairperson

Table 1: GRADES OF RECOMMENDATIONS AND LEVELS OF EVIDENCE

GRADES OF RECOMMENDATION	
I	Conditions for which there is evidence and/or general agreement that a given procedure/therapy is beneficial, useful and/or effective.
II	Conditions for which there is conflicting evidence and/or divergence of opinion about the usefulness/efficacy of a procedure/therapy.
	II-a : Weight of evidence/opinion is in favor of its usefulness/efficacy.
	II-b : Usefulness/efficacy is less well established by evidence/opinion.
III	Conditions for which there is evidence and/or general agreement that a procedure/therapy is not useful/effective and in some cases may be harmful.

LEVELS OF EVIDENCE	
A	Data derived from multiple randomised clinical trials or meta analyses.
B	Data derived from a single randomised clinical trial or large non-randomised studies.
C	Only consensus of opinions of experts, case studies or standard of Care.

Adapted from the American College of Cardiology Foundation / American Heart Association and The European Society of Cardiology

(Available at: http://assets.cardiosource.com/Methodology_Manual_for_ACC_AHA_Writing_Committees and at <http://www.escardio.org/guidelines-surveys/escguidelines/about/Pages/rules-writing.aspx>).

TABLE OF CONTENTS	Pages
Statement of Intent	1
Message from the Director General of Health	2
Members of the Expert Panel	3
External Reviewers	5
Rationale and Process of Guideline Development	6
Grades of Recommendations and Levels of Evidence	12
Table of Contents	13
Glossary	15
What's New in the Guidelines?	18
PART 1: Management of Heart Failure in Adults	
Summary	20
Algorithm and Flow Charts	30
1. INTRODUCTION	33
2. DEFINITION	34
3. CLASSIFICATION	34
4. PATHOPHYSIOLOGY	35
5. AETIOLOGY	37
6. DIAGNOSIS	39
7. PREVENTION	44
8. MANAGEMENT	48
8.1 Acute Heart Failure	48
8.2 Chronic Heart Failure due to Reduced LVEF < 40%	62
8.2.1 Non-Pharmacological Measures	62
8.2.2 Pharmacological Management	66
8.2.3 Device Therapy in Heart Failure	78
8.2.4 Surgery for Heart Failure	81
8.3 Asymptomatic Left Ventricular Dysfunction	82
8.4 Heart Failure with Preserved Left Ventricular Systolic Function	84

8.5 Special Groups	87
8.5.1 Diabetes and Heart Failure	87
8.5.2 Heart Failure in Pregnancy	90
8.5.3 Heart Failure in Adult Congenital Heart Disease	94
8.5.4 Arrhythmia-Induced Heart Failure	98
8.5.5 Cardio-oncology and Heart Failure	100
8.5.6 Heart Failure and Kidney Dysfunction	103
8.6 Advanced Heart Failure/Refractory Heart Failure	107
8.6.1 Heart Transplant	107
8.6.2 Mechanical Circulatory Support	108
8.7 Palliative and End of Life Care	109
9. ORGANISATION OF CARE	110
9.1 Level of Care and Shared Management	110
9.2 Monitoring and Follow-Up	112
9.3 Cardiology Referral	112
10. OTHER THERAPIES FOR HEART FAILURE	113
11. FUTURE DEVELOPMENT	114
12. PERFORMANCE MEASURES	115
APPENDIX	116
REFERENCES	122
Part 2: Management of Heart Failure in Paediatrics	
13. HEART FAILURE IN THE PAEDIATRIC POPULATION	145
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	158
DISCLOSURE STATEMENT	158
SOURCES OF FUNDING	158

GLOSSARY

Abbreviation	Description
ACE-I	Angiotensin Converting Enzyme Inhibitors
ACHD	Adult Congenital Heart Disease
AF	Atrial Fibrillation
AHF	Acute Heart Failure
ARB	Angiotensin Receptor Blockers
ARNI	Angiotensin-Receptor Blocker- Nephilysin Inhibitor
ASD	Atrial Septal Defects
ASLVSD	Asymptomatic Lv Systolic Dysfunction
AV	Atrial Ventricular
BNP	Brain Natriuretic Peptide
CABG	Coronary Artery Bypass Surgery
CAD	Coronary Artery Disease
CKD	Chronic Kidney Disease
CKMB	Creatine Kinase-Muscle/Brain Band
CMRI	Cardiac Magnetic Resonance Imaging
CV	Cardiovascular
CVD	Cardiovascular Disease
CPAP	Continous Positive Airway Pressure
CPG	Clinical Practice Guideline
CRS	Cardiorenal Syndrome
CRT	Cardiac Resynchronisation Therapy
CSA	Central Sleep Apnoea
DBP	Diastolic Blood Pressure
DOAC	Direct Oral Anticoagulants
DPP-4i	Dipeptidyl Peptidase 4 Inhibitors

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

Abbreviation	Description
DVT	Deep Vein Thrombosis
ECG	Electrocardiogram
EF	Ejection Fractions
eGFR	Estimated Glomerular Filtration Rate
GGT	Gamma-Glutamyl Transferase
GLP-1	Glucagon Like Peptide-1
HF	Heart Failure
HFC	Heart Failure Clinic
HFNC	High Flow Nasal Cannula
HfmrEF	Heart Failure With Mid-Range LVEF
HfrEF	Heart Failure With Reduced Ejection Fraction
HfpEF	Heart Failure With Preserved Ejection Fraction
HRQoL	Health Related Quality Of Life
IABP	Intra-Aortic Balloon Counterpulsation
ICD	Implantable Cardioverter Defibrillator
JVP	Jugular Venous Pulse
LBBB	Left Bundle Branch Block
LV	Left Ventricular
LVAD	Left Ventricular Assist Device
LVEF	Left Ventricular Ejection Fraction
LVH	Left Ventricular Hypertrophy
MI	Myocardial Infarction
MRA	Mineralocorticoid Receptor Antagonist
NP	Natriuretic Peptide
NSAIDs	Non-Steroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drugs

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

Abbreviation	Description
NTproBNP	N-Terminal Pro BNP
NYHA	New York Heart Association
OMT	Optimal Medical Treatment
OSA	Obstructive Sleep Apnoea
PCI	Percutaneous Coronary Intervention
PND	Paroxysmal Nocturnal Dyspnoea
PP	Pulse Pressure
PS	Pulmonary Stenosis
PSG	Polysomnography
RAS	Renin Angiotensin System
RCT	Randomise Control Trial
RV	Right Ventricular
SBP	Systolic Blood Pressure
SCD	Sudden Cardiac Death
SDB	Sleep Disordered Breathing
SGLT2i	Sodium-Glucose Cotransport-2 Inhibitors
VAD	Ventricular Assist Device
VF	Ventricular Fibrillation
VSD	Ventricular Septal Defect
VT	Ventricular Tachycardia

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

WHAT'S NEW IN THE GUIDELINES

	3 rd Ed CPG Heart Failure (Old)	4 th Ed CPG Heart Failure (New)
Acute Heart Failure	Acute Cardiogenic Pulmonary Oedema	<p>Concept of classification according to clinical presentation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Warm and wet - adequate perfusion but congested (lungs and/or periphery) ➤ Cold and dry - hypoperfusion and dehydrated/not congested ➤ Cold and wet - hypoperfusion and congested (lungs and/or periphery) ➤ Warm and dry - adequate perfusion and dehydrated/not congested. <p>These patients have either mild HF or are in the compensated stage of HF.</p>
Oxygen Therapy	-	High flow nasal cannula (HFNC) seems more effective than conventional oxygen therapy and non-inferior to non-invasive positive pressure ventilation in most studies. (IIa, B)
Pharmacotherapy of HF/EF	-	ARNI should be considered as a replacement to ACE-I/ARB in patients with HF/EF who remain symptomatic to decrease CV death, HF hospitalisations, and symptoms. (I, B)
Surgical Management of HF/EF	No mention of mitralclip	In patients with moderate to severe MR and who are not surgical candidates, the use of mitralclip has shown mixed results. (IIb, B)
		<p>8.5.1. Diabetes and Heart Failure 8.5.3. Heart Failure in Adult Congenital Heart Disease 8.5.4. Arrhythmia induced Heart Failure 8.5.5. Cardio-oncology and Heart Failure 8.5.6. Heart Failure and Kidney Dysfunction 9. Organisation of Care 14. Heart Failure in the Paediatric population</p>

PART 1

Management of Heart Failure in Adults

SUMMARY

Key Message 1:

- Heart Failure (HF) is an important cause of hospitalisation accounting for about 6%-10% of all acute medical admissions and an important cause of hospital readmissions in Malaysia.
- HF costs was estimated to account for approximately 1.8% of total health expenditure.

Key message 2: Definition and Classification

- HF is a clinical syndrome due to any structural or physiological abnormality of the heart resulting in its inability to meet the metabolic demands of the body or its ability to do so only at higher than normal filling pressures.
- HF can also be classified according to the clinical presentation into:
 - Acute heart failure (Acute HF)
 - Chronic heart failure (Chronic HF).
- In the setting of Left Ventricular (LV) myocardial dysfunction, left ventricular ejection fraction (LVEF) may be:
 - Reduced (LVEF \leq 40%) - Heart failure with reduced ejection function (HF_rEF).
 - Preserved (LVEF \geq 50%) - Heart failure with preserved ejection fraction (HF_pEF)
 - Mid-range (LVEF 41%-49%) - Heart failure with the LVEF being in the mid range (HF_mEF).

Key message 3: Diagnosis

- The clinical suspicion of HF should be supported by objective clinical evidence of cardiac dysfunction. (Flow Chart I, Page 28)
- Exercise capacity in a patient with heart disease is assessed by the New York Heart Association (NYHA) functional classification.
- Relevant investigations help to confirm the diagnosis and determine the type of HF and the aetiology.

Key message 4: Prevention

- Prevention and early intervention wherever appropriate, should be the primary objective of management.

Key message 5: Acute Heart Failure (AHF)

- AHF may present as:
 - Pulmonary and/or peripheral oedema (“wet” - volume overload)
 - Low output state - shock (“dry” - usually due to pump failure)
 - Combination of pulmonary oedema and a low output state
- The principles of management are:
 - Rapid recognition of the condition.
 - Identification and stabilisation of life threatening haemodynamics.
 - Maintaining oxygenation and perfusion of the vital organs.
 - Relieving clinical symptoms and signs.
 - Identification and treatment of the underlying cause and precipitating/aggravating factors.
- After initial clinical assessment, management should be instituted as in Flow Chart II, Page 29.
- For grading of recommendations and levels of evidence, see Table 2, Page 30.

Key message 6: Heart Failure with Reduced Left Ventricular Function (HF/EF)

- Non-pharmacological measures - These include:
 - Education of the patient and family about the disease, treatment options and prognosis.
 - Encouraging lifestyle measures such as:
 - ◆ Regular exercise
 - ◆ Avoid adding salt and flavouring sauces such as soya sauce, tomato ketchup and chilli sauce while cooking or at the table.
 - ◆ Fluid intake should be individualised. - A general recommendation is 1-1.5 litres per day in patients with normal renal function.
 - ◆ Smoking cessation and avoiding alcohol.
 - Advice regarding sexual activities and pregnancy.
- Pharmacological management:
 - After initial clinical assessment, management should be instituted as in Flow Chart III, Page 31.
 - For grading of recommendations and levels of evidence, see Table 3, Page 33.
 - Medications that have been shown to improve survival in HF/EF include:
 - ◆ Angiotensin converting Enzyme Inhibitors (ACE-I)/ Angiotensin II Receptor Blockers (ARB) if ACE-I intolerant
 - ◆ Angiotensin receptor-neprilysin inhibitor (ARNI)
 - ◆ β -blockers
 - ◆ Mineralcorticoid receptor antagonist (MRA)

- Device therapy:
 - Cardiac resynchronisation therapy (CRT) can be considered in patients with all of the following criteria:
 - ◆ Sinus rhythm
 - ◆ LVEF \leq 35%
 - ◆ Left Bundle Branch Block (LBBB)
 - ◆ QRS duration $>$ 150ms
 - An implantable cardioverter defibrillator (ICD) is indicated for secondary prevention in:
 - ◆ Patients resuscitated from sudden cardiac death (SCD) due to ventricular fibrillation or haemodynamically unstable sustained ventricular tachycardia.
 - ◆ Prior MI and LVEF \leq 40% with non-sustained VT AND inducible sustained VT or VF during an an electrophysiology (EP) study.
 - ◆ Patients with chronic HF and LVEF \leq 35% who experience syncope of unclear origin.
- Surgery For HF
 - Coronary revascularisation (by either coronary artery bypass graft (CABG) or percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI)) should be considered in patients with HF and suitable coronary anatomy.

Key message 7: Asymptomatic LV Dysfunction

- Identify patients who are at high risk of developing LV dysfunction and treat the underlying disease appropriately.
- ACE-I and β -blockers (post MI) have been shown to slow down the onset of symptoms and reduce cardiac morbidity.

Key message 8: Heart Failure with Preserved LV Function (HFpEF)

- HFpEF is a common cause of HF in the elderly.
- Hypertension is an important cause and should be treated according to guidelines.
- Management remains empiric since trial data are limited.
- Treat volume overload with diuretics and manage comorbidities.

Key message 9: HFrEF in Special Groups**● Diabetes**

- Persons with diabetes are managed in the same manner as persons without diabetes.
- When managing diabetes in patients with HF:
 - ◆ The sodium-glucose cotransport-2 inhibitors (SGLT2i) have been shown to reduce CV mortality and HF hospitalisations.
 - ◆ Saxagliptin, a dipeptidyl peptidase 4 inhibitors (DPP-4i) and thiazolidinediones are best avoided because of a trend towards harm.
 - ◆ Sulphonylureas, biguanides like metformin and alpha-glucosidase inhibitors like acarbose are generally safe.

● Pregnancy

- The management of HF in pregnancy is more difficult than in the non-pregnant state and should be managed by a multidisciplinary team consisting of physicians, obstetricians and paediatricians.
- Patients with LVEF < 30% and those in NYHA Class III and IV should be strongly advised not to get pregnant. They should be referred to the pre-pregnancy clinic for advice on the modes of contraception. If pregnant, termination should be considered.
- HF that develops during pregnancy can be managed with the judicious use of diuretics, digoxin, nitrates, β -blockers and/or hydralazine.

● Arrhythmias

- Arrhythmia-induced HF (also known as Tachycardia-induced cardiomyopathy) is a reversible cause of HF.
- Successful treatment of the arrhythmia by drug therapy or catheter ablation can result in normalisation of LV function.

● Cardio-oncology

- Chemotherapy-induced cardiomyopathy is not common; clinical HF occurs in 1-5%.
- Close collaboration between the oncologist and the cardiologist is important.
- Patients undergoing chemotherapy should have a careful clinical evaluation and assessment and treatment of CV risk factors.

● Chronic Kidney Disease

- Cardiac and kidney disease frequently co-exist and this increases the complexity and costs of care, and may interact to worsen prognosis.
- Management includes the use of intravenous diuretics, careful use of Renin Angiotensin System (RAS) blockers, β -blockers and occasionally ultrafiltration and haemodialysis.

Key message 10: Advanced Heart Failure

Patients with advanced HF should be referred to assess whether they may be potential candidates for mechanical circulatory support (e.g. Left Ventricular Assist Device - LVAD) and consideration for heart transplant.

Patients with refractory symptoms despite guideline-directed medical therapy, should be considered for palliative and end of life care.

Key message 11: Organisation of Care

Heart Failure clinics will serve as an intermediary between in-patient hospital care and community primary care.

Key Recommendations

Key Recommendation # 1:

- In making a diagnosis of Heart failure, a detailed history and a thorough physical examination are important.
- The clinical suspicion of HF should be supported by objective clinical evidence of cardiac dysfunction. (Flow Chart 1, Page 28)
- The exercise capacity in a patient with heart disease should be assessed by the New York Heart Association (NYHA) functional classification. (Table 6, Page 40)

Key Recommendation # 2:

- To confirm the diagnosis and determine the type of HF and the aetiology, the following should be performed:
 - Basic investigations such as ECG, Chest Radiography, blood and urine tests.
 - An echocardiogram to help determine the type of HF (HFrEF, HFmrEF or HFpEF) and identify structural cardiac defects.

Key Recommendation # 3:

- The underlying disease and the precipitating cause(s), if present, need to be identified so that disease-specific treatment can be initiated early.

Key Recommendation # 4:

- The primary objective of management should be prevention of HF and early intervention, wherever appropriate.

Key Recommendation # 5:

- In Acute HF, it is important to:
 - Rapidly recognise the condition.
 - Identify and stabilise haemodynamics.
 - Maintain oxygenation and perfusion of the vital organs.
 - Relieve clinical symptoms and signs.
 - Identify and treat the underlying cause and precipitating/aggravating factors.
- After initial clinical assessment, management should be instituted as in Flow Chart II, Page 29.

Key Recommendation # 6:

- In Chronic HF, non-pharmacological measures play an important role and it is important to :
 - Educate patient and family about the disease, treatment options and prognosis.
 - Encourage lifestyle measures.
 - Individualise fluid intake - A general recommendation is 1-1.5 litres per day in patients with normal renal function.
 - Provide advice regarding sexual activities and pregnancy.

Key Recommendation # 7:

Management of chronic HF due to HF_rEF is as in Flow Chart III, Page 31.

- Pharmacological Agents that should be administered are those that have been shown to improve survival in HF_rEF and these include:
 - ACE-I/ARB if ACE-I intolerant
 - ARNI
 - β -blockers
 - MRA
- The doses of these medications should be slowly up-titrated to the maximal tolerated doses. (Tables 10-13, Pages 68, 70-72)

Key Recommendation # 8:

In patients with HF_rEF, Device therapy should be considered in patients who fulfil the eligibility criteria, who otherwise have good clinical function and prognosis (life expectancy of more than 1 year) to improve their survival.

- CRT can be considered in patients with all of the following criteria:
 - Sinus rhythm
 - LVEF \leq 35%
 - LBBB
 - QRS duration $>$ 150ms
- An ICD is indicated for secondary prevention in:
 - Patients resuscitated from SCD due to ventricular fibrillation or haemodynamically unstable sustained ventricular tachycardia.
 - Patients with chronic HF and LVEF \leq 35% who experience syncope of unclear origin.
 - Prior MI and LVEF \leq 40% with non-sustained VT AND inducible sustained VT or VF during an EP study.

Key Recommendation # 9:

- In patients with HF_rEF, coronary revascularisation (by either CABG or PCI) should be considered in patients with HF and suitable coronary anatomy.

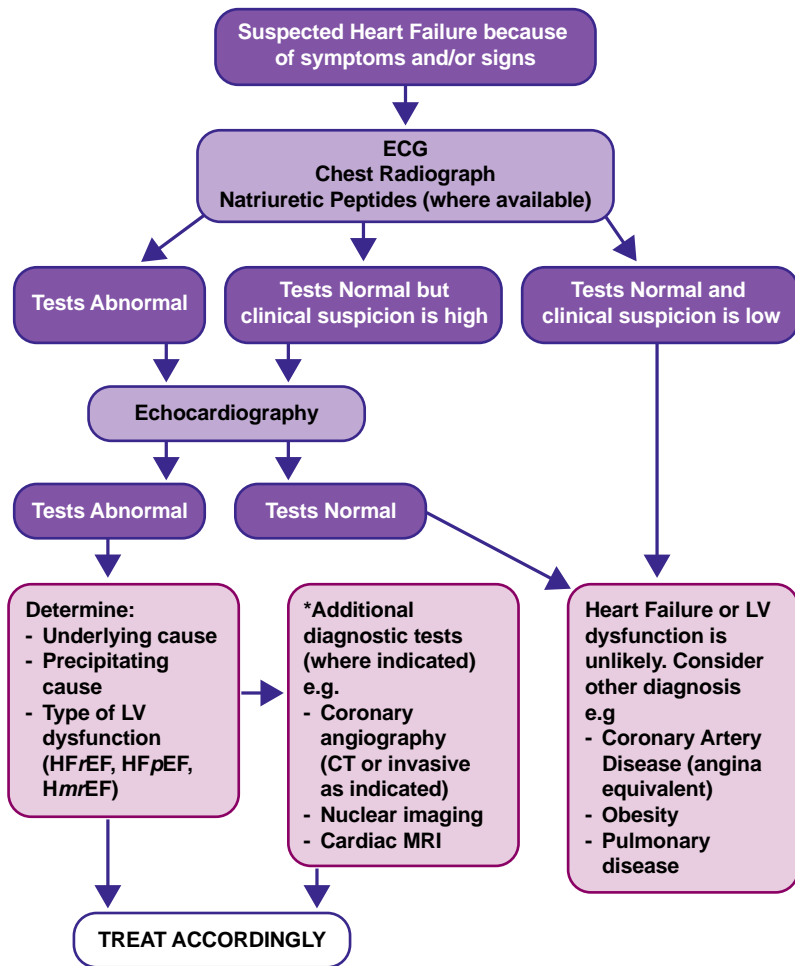
Key Recommendation # 10:

- In managing patients with HF_pEF:
 - Hypertension is an important cause and should be treated according to guidelines.
 - Treat volume overload with diuretics
 - Manage comorbidities.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

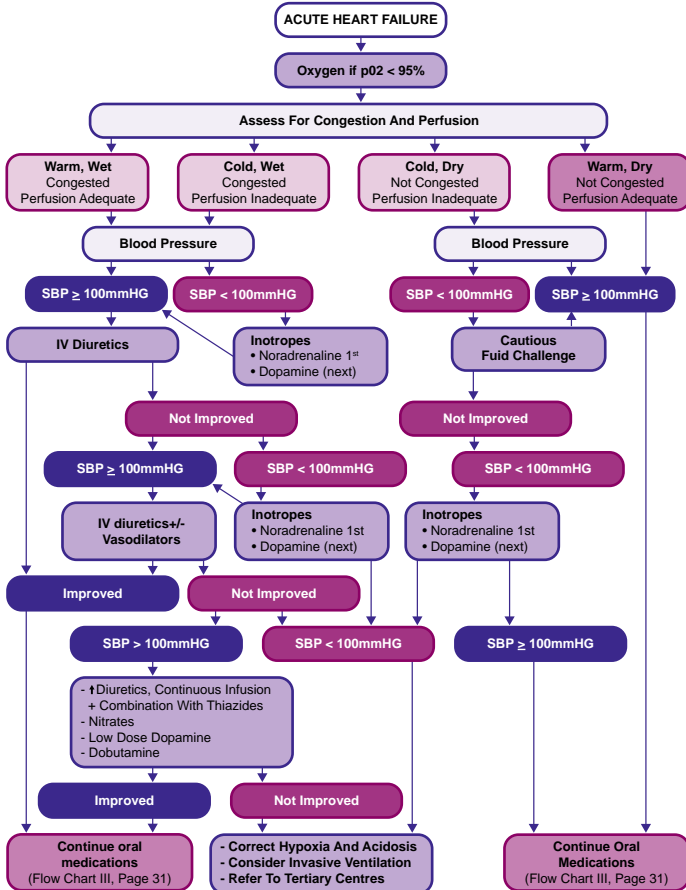
Flow Chart I: Algorithm for the Diagnosis of Heart Failure or LV Dysfunction



* Section 6, Page 39

CLINICAL PRACTICE GUIDELINES
MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019
 4th Edition

Flow Chart II: Management of Acute Heart Failure



***Hypoperfusion:** cold peripheries, capillary refill time more than 2 seconds, diaphoresis, oliguria, dizziness, confusion, narrow pulse pressure, hypotension.

****Congestion:** peripheral oedema, orthopnoea, paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea, lung crepitations, jugular venous dilatation, hepatojugular reflux, congested hepatomegaly, gut congestion, ascites.

From onset, evaluate to identify correctable/reversible lesions-arrhythmias, hypertension, myocardial ischaemia/infarction, valvular heart disease.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition
Table 2: Grading of Recommendations in the Management of Acute HF

Intervention	Grades of Recommendation	Levels of Evidence	Comments
INITIAL MANAGEMENT CONSISTS OF:			
Oxygen	I	C	Maintain the oxygen saturation above 95%
Diuretics	I	B	Indicated for fluid retention
Nitrates	I	B	Contraindicated if SBP < 100mmHg. Use with caution in valvular stenosis.
Morphine	IIb	B	Indicated in patients who are dyspnoeic and restless
NOT RESPONSIVE TO INITIAL TREATMENT AND SBP ≥ 100mmHg			
Diuretics	IIa	B	Continuous infusion; combination with nitrates, dopamine, dobutamine or thiazide
Dopamine (<2-3ug/kg/min)	IIb	B	To improve renal perfusion and promote diuresis
Dobutamine	IIb	B	Indicated for peripheral hypoperfusion +/- pulmonary congestion
NOT RESPONSIVE TO INITIAL TREATMENT AND SBP < 100mmHg			
Noradrenaline	IIa	B	Indicated to increase the BP
Dopamine (> 5ug/kg/min)	IIb	B	Indicated to increase the BP
IABP	IIa	B	Indicated as a bridge till myocardial recovery or heart transplant
Ventricular Assist Device (VAD)	IIa	B	Indicated as a bridge till myocardial recovery or heart transplant

Flow Chart III: Optimising Drug Therapy In Chronic HF/EF

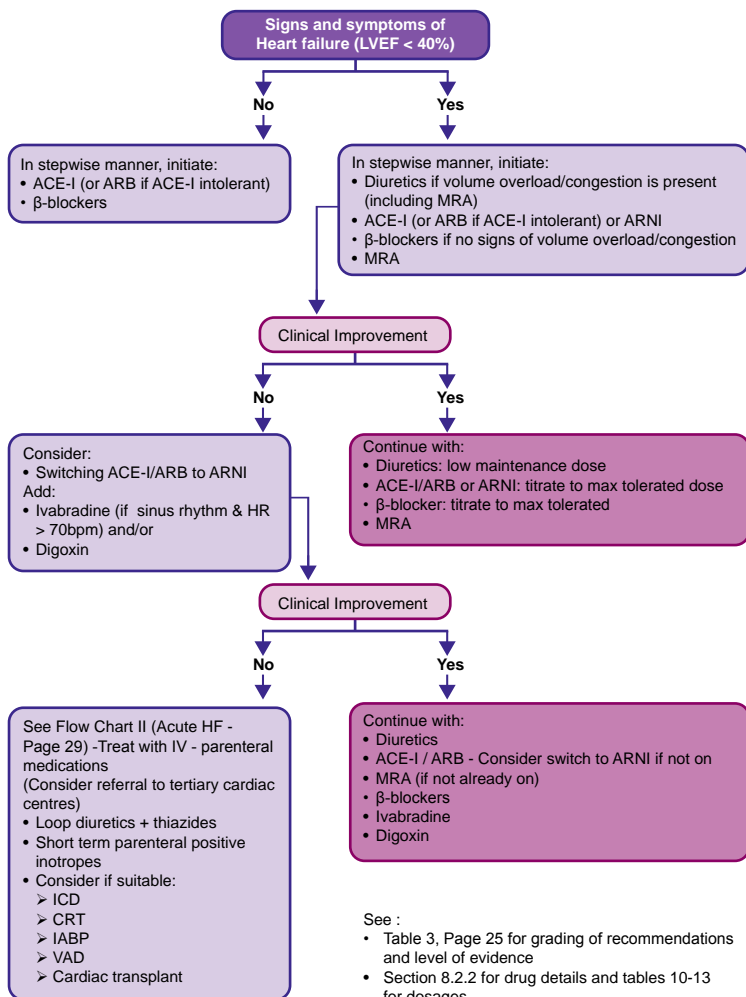


Table 3: Grading of Recommendations in the Management of Chronic HF \neq EF

Intervention	Grades of Recommendation	Levels of Evidence	Comments
INDICATED FOR FLUID RETENTION IN NYHA II - IV			
Diuretics	I	B	Not shown to improve survival.
INDICATED IN ALL PATIENTS			
ACE-I	I	A	Improves survival and delays progression in all classes of HF.
ARB	I	A	In ACE-I intolerant patients.
β-blockers	I	A	Improves survival and delays progression in all classes of HF.
IN ADDITION TO THE ABOVE, THE FOLLOWING ARE INDICATED IN SELECTED PATIENTS			
Mineralocorticoid receptor antagonists (Spironolactone, Eplerenone)	I	A	Improves survival and reduces hospitalisations in moderate to severe HF and in post MI patients with mild HF.
ARB (in place of ACE-I)	I	B	In patients post MI and LVEF < 40%, Valsartan shown to be comparable to captopril.
ARNI (in place of ACE-I/ARB)	I	B	In patients with HF \neq EF who remain symptomatic to decrease CV death, HF hospitalisations, and symptoms.
Digoxin	I	B	In patients with HF and AF.
	IIa	B	No effect on survival. Reduces hospitalisations when added to optimal medical therapy.
Ivabradine	IIa	B	Reduces hospitalisations when added to optimal medical therapy in patients in sinus rhythm and heart rate > 70bpm.
ICD (implantable cardioverter defibrillator)	I	A	Improves survival in patients with resuscitated cardiac arrest, VF or sustained VT.
	I	A	Improves survival in patients > 40 days post MI, LVEF \leq 30%, with non-sustained VT AND inducible sustained VT or VF during an EP study and on optimal medical treatment, and in NYHA II or III.
	I	B	Improves survival in patients with prior MI and > 40 days post MI and 3 months after revascularisation, LVEF \leq 35% and NYHA class II - III.
	I	B	Improves survival in patients (no prior MI), LVEF \leq 35%, on optimal medical treatment, and in NYHA II or III.
CRT (cardiac resynchronisation therapy)	I	A	Improves survival in patients having all of the following: sinus rhythm, LVEF \leq 35%, LBBB and QRS duration on resting 12-lead ECG: • > 150ms • > 120-149 msec
	IIa	B	

1. INTRODUCTION

Heart failure (HF) is a clinical syndrome and represents the end stage of most heart diseases. The prevalence of HF varies between 3 - 20 per 1000 population, although in persons over the age of 65 years, it could be as high as 100 per 1000 population.¹ In nearly all regions of the world HF is both common and increasing, affecting between 1 - 2% of the population.^{2,3}

The main causes of HF amongst adult Malaysians were ischaemic heart disease (68%), valvular/rheumatic heart disease (29%) and non-ischaemic cardiomyopathy (28%).⁴ Vascular risk factors such as hypertension, diabetes mellitus, and dyslipidaemia were common in Asian HF patients, particularly so in Malaysia (75%, 67%, and 52%, respectively).⁴ In-patient mortality was 6%, with a 30-day readmission rate of 30%.⁴

HF is an important cause of hospitalisation accounting for about 6% - 10% of all acute medical admissions in Malaysia.^{5,6}

It is also an important cause of hospital re-admissions.^{7,8} About 25% of patients with HF are readmitted within 30 days for acute decompensation.^{7,8} The prognosis for HF remains poor. The 1-year mortality rate varies between 5% to 52% depending on the severity and the presence of co-morbidity.^{9,10} With a 5-year mortality at 48%, HF is deadlier than many cancers, for example, colorectal cancer (35.5%), non Hodgkin's lymphoma (29.6%), and breast cancer (10%).⁹⁻¹¹

The overall global economic cost of HF in 2012 was estimated at \$USD108 billion (MYR 439 billion) per annum.¹² The economic impact includes both direct and indirect costs.^{12,13} Globally, direct costs accounted for ~ 60% (\$USD 65 billion - MYR 264 billion) and indirect costs accounted for ~ 40% (\$USD43 billion - MYR 175 billion) of the overall spent.¹² With an aging, rapidly expanding and industrialising population this value will continue to rise.

For Malaysia, the estimated overall HF costs was \$USD 194 million (MYR 785 million), of which the direct and indirect costs were \$USD 12 million (MYR 48.7 million) and \$USD 182 million (MYR 740 million).¹² This is approximately 1.8% of total health expenditure, with 3.6% GDP spent on health. In general, in most low and medium economies like Malaysia, the indirect costs of HF in terms of premature mortality, morbidity, lost earning potential and unpaid care costs outweigh the direct costs. HF poses a major health and economic burden and an important goal in management is to prevent readmissions, thus reducing both direct and indirect costs.¹²

This guideline provides evidence-based recommendations to help health care providers in the management of their patients with HF. Beyond the Clinical Practice Guidelines (CPG), clinical management needs to be individualised to take into account patient's overall health goals, values, perspectives and preferences.

Sound clinical judgment plays an important role in formulating appropriate patient-centred care plans.

Key messages 1:

- HF is an important cause of hospitalisation accounting for about 6% - 10% of all acute medical admissions and an important cause of hospital readmissions in Malaysia.
- HF costs was estimated to account for approximately 1.8% of total health expenditure.

2. DEFINITION

HF is a clinical syndrome due to any structural or physiological abnormality of the heart resulting in its inability to meet the metabolic demands of the body or its ability to do so only at higher than normal filling pressures. This may be accompanied by signs and symptoms of systemic hypoperfusion and/or volume overload. Patients may have typical symptoms (e.g. breathlessness, ankle swelling and fatigue) and signs (e.g. elevated jugular venous pressure, ankle oedema, pulmonary crackles, and displaced apex beat). Occasionally, some patients may present without signs or symptoms of volume overload.

3. CLASSIFICATION

HF may be the result of any disorder of the endocardium, myocardium, pericardium or great vessels although commonly, it is due to myocardial dysfunction. It may involve only the left and/or right ventricle (RV).

HF may be classified in many ways. A commonly used classification is by left ventricular ejection fraction (LVEF). (Table 4, Page 36) This has been shown to have prognostic significance.¹⁴⁻¹⁶ Furthermore, aetiology, demographic characteristics and response to therapies differ in the different classes.^{14,15}

For practical purposes, HF can also be classified according to the clinical presentation into:

- Acute heart failure (Acute HF) - defined as the rapid onset of symptoms and signs of HF due to an acute deterioration of cardiac function in the presence or absence of previous cardiac disease.
- Chronic heart failure (Chronic HF) - this is a chronic state when patients have stable symptoms. In these patients, an acute precipitating or aggravating factor(s) may cause acute cardiac decompensation.

4. PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

The main pathophysiology of HF is due to a decrease in cardiac output. This will result in the following compensatory mechanisms:

- A higher ventricular end diastolic pressure - This is a compensatory mechanism to increase stroke volume by the Frank Starling mechanism.
- Neurohormonal activation of the:
 - Sympathetic nervous system
 - Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system
 - Vasopressin

This neurohormonal activation is aimed at increasing stroke volume and cardiac output by:

- An increase in heart rate and ventricular contraction
- Vasoconstriction of arterial resistance vessels to maintain blood pressure
- Venous constriction to increase venous preload
- Salt and water retention to increase preload

In general, these neurohormonal responses are compensatory mechanisms. However they can also aggravate HF by increasing ventricular afterload and increasing preload to the point where pulmonary and/or systemic congestion and oedema occur.

In the setting of LV myocardial dysfunction, LVEF may be:

- Reduced (LVEF \leq 40%) - Heart failure with reduced ejection function (HF_rEF).
- Preserved (LVEF \geq 50%) - Heart failure with preserved ejection fraction (HF_pEF).
- Mid-range (LVEF 41%-49%) - Heart Failure with the LVEF being in the mid range (HF_mEF).

4.1 HFrEF

In HFrEF, cardiac output is reduced due to depressed myocardial contractility, irrespective of the aetiology. This leads to a cascade of pathophysiological changes as outlined above. There are effective medical and device therapies that have been shown to have survival benefit in HFrEF.

4.2 HFpEF

About 50% of patients presenting with HF have normal systolic function with predominantly diastolic dysfunction.^{7,17,18} Diastolic dysfunction leads to impaired left ventricular (LV) filling due to decreased relaxation (during early diastole) and/or reduced compliance (early to late diastole) leading to elevated filling pressures. These haemodynamic changes are accompanied by predominantly signs of pulmonary and/or venous congestion and occasionally systemic hypoperfusion as well. There is limited data available on therapies that improve survival in HFpEF unlike those with HFrEF.

4.3 HFmrEF

Patients with HFmrEF have a clinical profile that are closer to those of patients with HFpEF than those of HFrEF. This category of patients is poorly studied and their response to therapies is unknown. Data seems to indicate that they have all cause readmission risk that are higher than HFpEF. In addition, the 1-year mortality rate appeared comparable to HFrEF and HFpEF after risk adjustments.¹⁵

Table 4: Classification Of Heart Failure According To LVEF

Ejection Fraction Terminology	LVEF
Heart Failure with Reduced Ejection Fraction (HFrEF)	≤ 40%
Heart Failure with mid-range LVEF (HFmrEF)	41% - 49%
Heart Failure with Preserved Ejection Fraction (HFpEF)	≥ 50%

Key messages 2:

- HF is a clinical syndrome due to any structural or physiological abnormality of the heart resulting in its inability to meet the metabolic demands of the body or its ability to do so only at higher than normal filling pressures.
- HF can also be classified according to the clinical presentation into:
 - Acute heart failure (Acute HF)
 - Chronic heart failure (Chronic HF)
- In the setting of LV myocardial dysfunction, LVEF may be:
 - Reduced (LVEF \leq 40%) - Heart failure with reduced ejection function (HFrEF).
 - Preserved (LVEF \geq 50%) - Heart failure with preserved ejection fraction (HFpEF)
 - Mid-range (LVEF 41% - 49%) - Heart Failure with the LVEF being in the mid range (HFmrEF)

5. AETIOLOGY

HF is not a complete diagnosis. It is important to identify the underlying disease and the precipitating cause(s), if present, so that disease-specific treatment can be initiated early.

The common underlying causes of HF in adults are:

- Coronary artery disease (CAD)
- Hypertension
- Dilated cardiomyopathy-idiopathic, familial
- Valvular heart disease
- Diabetic cardiomyopathy

Other causes of HF include:

- Congenital heart disease
- Cor pulmonale
- Pericardial disease: constrictive pericarditis, cardiac tamponade
- Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy
- Viral myocarditis
- Acute rheumatic fever

- Toxic: Alcohol, cardiotoxic chemotherapy e.g. doxorubicin, trastuzumab (Herceptin), cyclophosphamide.
- Endocrine and metabolic disorders: thyroid disease, acromegaly, pheochromocytoma.
- Collagen vascular disease: systemic lupus erythematosus, polymyositis, polyarteritis nodosa.
- Tachycardia induced cardiomyopathy eg uncontrolled atrial fibrillation.
- Infiltrative cardiac disease e.g. amyloid, hyper-eosinophilic syndrome.
- Miscellaneous.
 - High output HF e.g. severe anaemia, large A-V shunts/malformations.
 - Peripartum cardiomyopathy.
 - Stress (Takotsubo) cardiomyopathy.

Patients with Chronic HF may occasionally develop acute decompensation. Factors that can contribute to this Acute HF are listed in Table 5, Page 39.

The more important causes that need to be recognised and treated appropriately are:

- Acute myocardial infarction/myocardial ischaemia.
- Arrhythmias (e.g. atrial fibrillation).
- Hypertensive emergencies.
- Infections (e.g. pneumonia).
- Non-compliance to medications.
- Excessive fluid and salt intake.
- Anaemia.
- Development of renal impairment.
- Adverse effects of drug therapy (e.g. non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs).

Table 5: Factors Contributing to Decompensation in a Patient with Stable HF

<p>Patient Factors</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Non-compliance to medications ● Dietary indiscretion especially salt and fluid intake ● Inappropriate medications e.g. NSAIDs and COX-2 inhibitors ● Alcohol consumption
<p>Cardiac Causes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Superimposed myocardial ischaemia or infarction (often asymptomatic) ● Hypertensive emergencies ● Arrhythmias ● Pulmonary embolism ● Secondary mitral or tricuspid regurgitation
<p>Systemic Conditions</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Superimposed infections ● Anaemia ● Thyroid disease ● Electrolyte disturbances ● Worsening renal disease
<p>Others</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Urinary retention ● Severe emotional or physical stress

6. DIAGNOSIS

HF is a clinical diagnosis based on a detailed history and physical examination.

6.1. Symptoms and signs

The clinical suspicion of HF should be supported by objective evidence of cardiac dysfunction. Breathlessness with orthopnoea, paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea (PND), reduced exercise tolerance and ankle swelling are the characteristic symptoms of HF.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

Signs which are more specific for HF are an elevated jugular venous pulse (JVP), and a third heart sound. These signs are associated with adverse outcomes.¹⁹ A fourth heart sound is due to atrial contraction and is more frequent in patients with HFpEF. It is absent in patients with atrial fibrillation (AF).

These signs may be accompanied by a laterally displaced apical impulse and a cardiac murmur. Other supportive signs include peripheral oedema, tachycardia, narrow pulse pressure, pulmonary crepitations, hepatomegaly and ascites. These clinical findings may be transient and resolve completely following initial therapy.

However, these signs are difficult to detect and are not always easily reproducible in the elderly, the obese and in patients with chronic lung disease. Occasionally symptoms and signs of volume overload may be absent and the patient may present with fatigue only.

In patients presenting with dysnoea, acute LV failure can sometimes mimic an acute exacerbation of bronchial asthma. Thus, a proper history and clinical examination is essential.

Exercise capacity in a patient with heart disease is assessed by the New York Heart Association (NYHA) functional classification. (Table 6, Page 40)

Table 6: New York Heart Association Functional Classification for Patients with Heart Disease

CLASS	DESCRIPTION	1 Year Mortality
CLASS I	No limitation. Ordinary physical activity does not cause undue fatigue, dyspnoea or palpitation.	5 - 10%
CLASS II	Slight limitation of physical activity. Such patients are comfortable at rest. Ordinary physical activity results in fatigue, palpitation, dyspnoea or angina.	10 - 15%
CLASS III	Marked limitation of physical activity. Although patients are comfortable at rest, less than ordinary activity will lead to symptoms.	15 - 20%
CLASS IV	Inability to carry on any physical activity without discomfort. Symptoms of heart failure are present at rest.	20 - 50%

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

Once the diagnosis of HF has been made, it is important to establish the aetiology of the syndrome. (Section 5, Page 37)

The diagnosis of HF_rEF requires these conditions to be satisfied:

- Symptoms and signs typical of HF.
- Objective evidence of reduced LVEF.

In the diagnosis of HF_pEF the requirements are:

- Symptoms and signs typical of HF.
- Objective evidence of a normal, non-dilated LV and/or evidence of diastolic dysfunction. Relevant structural heart disease (LV hypertrophy/LA enlargement).

Key Recommendation # 1:

- In making a diagnosis of Heart failure, a detailed history and a thorough physical examination are important.
- The clinical suspicion of HF should be supported by objective clinical evidence of cardiac dysfunction. (Flow Chart I, Page 28)
- The exercise capacity in a patient with heart disease should be assessed by the New York Heart Association (NYHA) functional classification. (Table 6, Page 40)

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

6.2 Investigations

BASIC INVESTIGATIONS	
12 lead ECG	- To assess heart rate, rhythm, QRS morphology, QRS duration, QRS voltage, evidence of ischaemia, LV hypertrophy and arrhythmias.
Chest radiograph	- To look for pulmonary congestion, cardiomegaly and presence of underlying lung pathology. - Patients with HFpEF may have a normal cardiac size.
Blood tests	FBC, renal function, liver function, serum glucose, lipid profile
Urinalysis	To look for proteinuria, glycosuria.
OTHER IMPORTANT INVESTIGATIONS	
Echocardiography	<p>This will allow assessment of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● LV chamber size, volume and systolic function ● LV wall thickness, evidence of scarring and wall motion abnormalities ● Diastolic function of the heart ● Valvular structure and function ● Congenital cardiac abnormalities ● LV mechanical dyssynchrony ● Pulmonary hypertension. <p>It is the most useful and widely available test to establish the diagnosis in patients suspected of HF.</p>
Natriuretic Peptides (NP): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Brain natriuretic peptide (BNP) or ● N-terminal pro BNP (NTproBNP) 	<p>BNP and NTproBNP are a family of hormones secreted by the ventricles in response to wall stress. They are useful in the following situations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In the emergency setting: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➢ NP are useful as a 'rule out' test for patients presenting with acute dyspnoea. A level of < 100pg/ml for BNP and < 300pg/ml for NTproBNP makes the diagnosis of acute HF unlikely.²⁰⁻²³ These levels are affected by renal function and gender.²⁴⁻²⁶ (See Table 7, Page 44 for the optimal cut off values of NP to exclude or diagnose HF in patients with dyspnoea) ➢ A high level supports the diagnosis of acute HF and very high levels correlate with the severity of HF and adverse outcomes.²⁰⁻²³

continue to next page...

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In the community: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➢ They are a useful “rule out” test in the diagnosis of HF in patients presenting with dyspnoea.²⁷ ➢ Changes in the levels of BNP and NTproBNP predict risk of hospital admissions for HF.²⁸ ● The results of studies on the use of NP to guide therapy in HF are conflicting.²⁹⁻³² <p>NP levels are affected by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Atrial fibrillation (AF)^{33,34} - levels are increased even in the absence of HF. ● Age^{20,35} - Levels of NP increase with age ● Renal function²⁴⁻²⁶ ● Obesity^{36,37} - Levels are reduced in obesity ● Certain medications such as Angiotensin - Receptor Blocker - Nephilysin Inhibitor (ARNI) may interfere with the interpretation of BNP levels. <p>A raised NP level may be due to other causes besides HF. (Appendix I, Page 116)</p>
ADDITIONAL INVESTIGATIONS WHEN INDICATED:	
Blood tests	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Serum cardiac biomarkers: to look for myocardial necrosis-troponins, creatine kinase-muscle/brain band (CKMB). ● Thyroid function tests. <p>Other less common tests that may be considered include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Gamma-glutamyl transferase (GGT) ● Viral studies ● Iron studies.
Tests for myocardial ischaemia and/or viability	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Treadmill exercise test ● Stress echocardiography (exercise or pharmacological) ● Radionuclide studies ● Cardiac magnetic resonance imaging (Cardiac MRI)
Invasive tests	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Coronary angiography ● Cardiac catheterisation ● Endomyocardial biopsy
Others	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Holter electrocardiography, loop recorders ● Pulmonary function test

Table 7: Optimal Cut Points for Diagnosis or Exclusion of Heart Failure among Patients with Dyspnoea.²⁰⁻²³

	BNP (ng/L)	NTproBNP (ng/L)
Heart failure rule out	< 100	< 300
Heart failure possible	> 400	Age < 50 y: > 450
		Age 50 - 75: > 900
		Age > 75: > 1800

Key Recommendation # 2:

- To confirm the diagnosis and determine the type of HF and the aetiology, the following should be performed:
 - Basic investigations such as ECG, Chest Radiography, blood and urine tests .
 - An echocardiogram to help determine the type of HF (HF_{rEF} ,HF_{mrEF} or HF_{pEF}) and identify structural cardiac defects.

Key Recommendation # 3:

- The underlying disease and the precipitating cause(s), if present, need to be identified so that disease-specific treatment can be initiated early.

7. PREVENTION

Prevention of HF should always be the primary objective of management. It should focus on individuals:

- At high risk of developing cardiac disease.
- With cardiac disease but who still have normal myocardial function.
- Who have impaired myocardial function but who do not as yet have signs or symptoms of HF.

7.1 Individuals who are at high risk of developing HF/CAD but who do not as yet have structural heart disease.

These include individuals with:

- **Multiple risk factors for developing CAD** or who already have evidence of atherosclerotic disease in other vascular beds (e.g. cerebral, peripheral vascular disease)
- **Hypertension** - Increased systolic blood pressure (SBP) and pulse pressure (PP) are associated with the risk of HF in a continuous and graded manner.³⁸⁻⁴⁰ Diastolic blood pressure (DBP) demonstrates a U-shaped association with HF risk.³⁸⁻⁴⁰
- **Diabetes** - This is a risk factor for the development of HF independent of coexisting hypertension or CAD.⁴¹⁻⁴³ (Section 8.5.1, pg 87)
- **Obesity and metabolic syndrome** - Data from the Framingham Heart Study showed that each unit increase in body mass index was associated with a 5% increase in the risk of HF in men and 7% in women.⁴⁴
- **Smoking** - This leads to HF by direct effects on the myocardium and indirectly by causing or aggravating comorbidities that can cause HF.^{45, 46}
- **Familial hyperlipidaemia**
- **Family history of cardiomyopathy**
- **Thyroid disorders** - Both hyper and hypothyroidism.⁴⁷ In patients with symptomatic HF and LVEF < 35%, abnormal thyroid function was associated with a significant increase in mortality.⁴⁸
- **Renal disease**
- **Cardiotoxins** - excessive alcohol consumption, chemotherapeutic agents, illicit drug use such as cocaine, amphetamine, antidepressants.
- **Sleep-disordered breathing** (both central and obstructive sleep apnoea).^{49, 50}
- **Connective tissue diseases** such as rheumatoid arthritis, SLE.
- **Chronic pulmonary disease** with pulmonary hypertension.

In these individuals the following measures should be taken:

- I,A ● **Treating hypertension to target levels** - This has been shown to reduce the incidence of HF by as much as 50%.⁵¹ Treating isolated systolic hypertension in the elderly reduced risk of HF events by 49% and even in those over the age of 80 years, treating hypertension reduced new onset HF by 64%.⁵¹⁻⁵⁵ Aggressive lowering of the target SBP from ≤ 140 to ≤ 120 resulted in a 37% risk reduction of acute HF events in adults > 75 years.^{56, 57}
- Ila,B ● **Diabetes** - Optimise glycaemic control. Poor glycaemic control has been shown to increase the risk of HF.⁴¹⁻⁴³ (See Section 8.5.1, Page 87)

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

- I,B ● **Healthy lifestyles** - A normal body weight, absence of smoking, regular exercise, and consumption of fruits and vegetables were individually and jointly associated with a lower lifetime risk of HF.⁵⁸
- I,B ● **Smoking cessation** - Current smokers have a higher risk of HF compared to non-smokers and ex-smokers.^{59,60} Quitting smoking appears to have a substantial and early effect (within two years) on decreasing morbidity and mortality in patients with left ventricular dysfunction, which is at least as large as proven drug treatments recommended in patients with left ventricular dysfunction.⁶⁰
- I,B ● **Regular exercise** - A minimum physical activity of at least 150 minutes per week of moderate intensity activity has been recommended to prevent ischaemic heart disease.⁶¹
- I,B ● **Maintain ideal body weight**⁶¹
- I,C ● **Curbing alcohol consumption** - Chronic long-term abuse of alcohol can lead to alcoholic cardiomyopathy.
- I,A ● **Treating lipids to goal** in all individuals with established cardiovascular (CV) disease to reduce mortality. Statins have been shown to reduce the incidence of HF by approximately 20% among patients with hypercholesterolemia and CAD.⁵¹ Even low risk individuals benefit from statin therapy although the use of pharmacotherapy for primary prevention should be individualised.⁶²⁻⁶⁴
- **n-3 fatty acids** -
 - Ib,B ➤ Studies on the prevention of HF by n-3 fatty acids have been mixed.^{65,66} A study in patients with multiple CV risk factors or atherosclerotic vascular disease who had no previous MI, showed that n-3 fatty acids did not reduce CV mortality and morbidity.⁶⁷
 - Ib,B ➤ On the other hand, consumption of fish more than once per month was associated with a lower HF risk.⁶⁷
- Ia,B ● **Identifying and monitoring at risk individuals prior to administration of cardiotoxic chemotherapy.** The use of β -blockers/ACE-I/ARB's have been shown to prevent cardiotoxic cardiomyopathy.^{68,69} (See Section 8.5.5 Cardio-oncology, Page 100)
- Ib,C ● **Screening of first-degree relatives** of patients with known heritable cardiomyopathy.

- IIa,C ● **Detecting and treating thyroid disease** early to prevent thyroid heart disease.
- IIb,B ● **Obstructive sleep apnoea** is associated with an increase in the risk of HF.^{49,50} However, to date, the use of servo-ventilation and/or Continuous Positive Airway Pressure (CPAP) for central and /or obstructive sleep apnoea (OSA) has not been shown to prevent HF.⁷⁰⁻⁷²

7.2. Individuals with cardiac disease but who still have normal cardiac function. Strategies include:

- I,A ● Timely triage and appropriate treatment of patients with acute coronary syndromes.⁷³⁻⁷⁵
- I,A ● Patients with CAD should be treated appropriately with antiplatelet agents,⁷⁶⁻⁷⁹ β- blockers,^{80,81} ACE-I⁸² and statins.^{83,84} Coronary revascularisation should be offered as indicated. ACE-I reduce the incidence of HF incidence 37% among patients with reduced LV systolic function and by 23% among patients with CAD and normal LV systolic function.⁵¹
- I,B ● Patients with hypertension and left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH) should have their blood pressure control optimised. (< 140/< 90mmHG) Regression of LVH has been shown to be associated with a lower incidence of new onset HF.⁸⁵
- IIa,C ● Patients with significant valve disease (moderate and above) should be reassessed for progression and timely intervention as indicated.⁸⁶
- IIa,C ● Patients with arrhythmias, when indicated, should be referred for evaluation and treatment.⁸⁷
- I,C ● Patients with congenital heart disease should have their cardiac lesions corrected and appropriate follow-up should be available looking for progression and sequelae.

In addition to the measures stated above, the following medical therapy have been shown to help prevent HF:

- I,A ● **ACE-I** - have been shown to reduce the incidence of HF by 23% in individuals with CAD and normal LV systolic function.⁸⁸ It has also been shown to reduce new onset HF in patients with atherosclerotic vascular disease,⁸⁹ diabetes and hypertension with associated CV risk factors.^{90,91}

- Ila,A ● **ARB** - are non-inferior to ACE-I and should be considered in ACE-I intolerant patients.⁹²
- Ila,B ● **β-blockers** - in patients post myocardial infarction (MI).^{93,94}
- I,A ● **Statins** in patients with CAD.⁶²⁻⁶⁴
- Ila,A ● **Sodium-glucose cotransport-2 inhibitors** (SGLT2i) in patients with diabetes.⁹⁵⁻⁹⁸

7.3. Individuals with myocardial dysfunction but who do not as yet have signs and symptoms of HF

(Asymptomatic Left Ventricular Dysfunction).

Measures include:

- I,C ● Treat the underlying cause wherever possible.
- Prevent progression to symptomatic HF by guideline directed therapy.

Key Recommendation # 4:

- The primary objective of management should be prevention of HF and early intervention, wherever appropriate.

8. MANAGEMENT

8.1. ACUTE HEART FAILURE

Acute heart failure (AHF) is a clinical syndrome of new or worsening signs and symptoms of HF. It can be manifested as a first occurrence (de novo) or more commonly, as a result of deterioration of a previously diagnosed stable patient with HF.

AHF may present as:

- Pulmonary and/or peripheral oedema (“wet” - volume overload).
- Low output state - shock (“dry” - usually due to pump failure).
- Combination of pulmonary oedema and a low output state.

The onset and severity of symptoms can vary depending on the nature of the underlying disease and the rate at which the syndrome develops. The spectrum of clinical findings may range from worsening of peripheral oedema to life threatening pulmonary oedema or cardiogenic shock. It often requires urgent evaluation and treatment, which typically leads to hospitalisation.

Assessment and management must be made promptly and simultaneously.

The principles of management are:

- Rapid recognition of the condition.
- Identification and stabilisation of life threatening haemodynamics.
- Maintaining oxygenation and perfusion of the vital organs.
- Relieving clinical symptoms and signs.
- Identification and treatment of the underlying cause and precipitating/aggravating factors.

8.1.1 Classification of AHF

There are a number of ways to classify patients with AHF. These classifications allow physicians to systematically assess the risk, prognosis and treatment approach.

- According to aetiology and precipitating causes (Table 5, Page 39). The more important causes are:
 - Myocardial infarction/Ischaemia
 - Arrhythmias – commonly rapid AF
 - Acute valvular dysfunction e.g. acute mitral regurgitation from chordal rupture
 - Severe and uncontrolled hypertension
 - Infection e.g. pneumonia
 - Non-compliance to treatment especially oral diuretics
 - Fluid overload
- According to clinical presentation (Table 8, Page 50)
 - Warm and wet - adequate perfusion but congested** (lungs and/or periphery)
 - Cold and dry - hypoperfusion* and dehydrated/not congested**
 - Cold and wet - hypoperfusion* and congested** (lungs and/or periphery)
 - Warm and dry - adequate perfusion and dehydrated/not congested.** These patients have either mild HF or are in the compensated stage of HF.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

***Hypoperfusion:** cold peripheries, capillary refill time more than 2 seconds, diaphoresis, oliguria, dizziness, confusion, narrow pulse pressure, hypotension.

****Congestion:** peripheral oedema, orthopnoea, paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea, lung crepitations, jugular venous dilatation, hepatojugular reflux, congested hepatomegaly, gut congestion, ascites

Table 8: Classification of AHF according to Clinical Presentation and a Guide to Management

<p>Warm/Wet</p> <p>Perfusion: Adequate Fluid status: Congested</p> <p>Management:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Diuretics - Yes ● Vasodilators - Yes ● Inotropes - No 	<p>Warm/Dry</p> <p>Perfusion: Adequate Fluid status: Not congested</p> <p>Management:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Diuretics - No ● Vasodilators - No ● Inotropes - No
<p>Cold/Wet</p> <p>Perfusion: Poor Fluid status: Congested</p> <p>Management:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Diuretics - Yes ● Vasodilators - Cautious depending on BP ● Inotropes - Yes 	<p>Cold/Dry</p> <p>Perfusion: Poor Fluid status: Not congested</p> <p>Management:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Diuretics - No ● Vasodilators - Cautious depending on BP ● Inotropes - Yes <p>Consider fluid challenge cautiously</p>

The aim is to obtain optimal perfusion and fluid status (warm/dry).

8.1.2. Investigations

Essential Investigations in AHF include (See Section 6.2, Page 42)

- Electrocardiogram (ECG)
- Chest radiograph
- Blood investigations: haemoglobin, serum electrolytes, urea, creatinine, cardiac biomarkers (troponin, CKMB, Natriuretic Peptides - BNP or NTproBNP)
- Blood gases may be considered
- Echocardiography

8.1.3. Decision for hospitalisation and care-setting

I,C Initial care in the critical care unit (ICU/CCU) should be considered for high-risk patients with features such as:

- Haemodynamic instability
- Arrhythmias
- Hypoperfused state-cold peripheries, capillary refill time more than 2 seconds, diaphoresis, oliguria, dizziness, confusion, narrow pulse pressure, hypotension
- Need for invasive ventilatory support
- Oxygen saturation (SpO_2) < 90% despite supplemental oxygen.

I,C The remaining patients with AHF can be managed in a high-dependency unit or normal ward depending on the clinical circumstances. However clinical deterioration may occur and hence, frequent re-assessments are necessary.

I,C Step-down care from the ICU/CCU is dictated by clinical improvement. Similarly, should the patient not improve, he should be considered to be transferred to a tertiary hospital with a Cardiology Unit.

8.1.4. Management (Flow Chart II, Page 29; Table 2, Page 30 & Table 9, Page 57)

The management of patients with AHF is largely based on clinical judgement and experience rather than on randomised controlled trials. Most clinical trials have been small and of low quality.

8.1.4.1 Oxygen

- I,C ● Measurement of oxygenation by pulse oximetry (SpO_2) is recommended.
- I,B ● Supplemental oxygen therapy is recommended when the SpO_2 < 95% or PaO_2 < 60mmHg. It should be titrated to achieve SpO_2 > 95%.⁹⁹⁻¹⁰¹

- III,B ● Routine use in non-hypoxic patients is not recommended as it can cause deleterious effects such as vasoconstriction and a reduction in cardiac output.¹⁰²⁻¹⁰⁴
- IIa,B ● High flow nasal cannula (HFNC) seems more effective than conventional oxygen therapy and non-inferior to non-invasive positive pressure ventilation in most studies.^{105,106} It is also better tolerated.
- IIa,B ● Non-invasive positive pressure ventilation (NIV) such as CPAP and BiPAP should be considered early in patients with respiratory distress (respiratory rate > 25 breaths/min, SpO₂ < 90%) despite high-flow oxygen administration.¹⁰⁷⁻¹¹¹ There are no significant differences in clinical outcomes when comparing CPAP with BiPAP and the choice will depend on the equipment that is available.¹¹¹⁻¹¹³
 - NIV reduces respiratory distress and may decrease the need for intubation although data regarding mortality are less conclusive.^{110,111}
- I,C ● Intubation may be considered in patients with respiratory failure, who cannot be managed non-invasively, show signs of exhaustion and respiratory muscle fatigue.
 - Some helpful indicators of respiratory failure include:
 - Hypoxaemia (PaO₂ < 60mmHg),
 - Hypercapnia (PaCO₂ > 50mmHg), and
 - Acidosis (pH < 7.35)

8.1.4.2 Diuretics

- Diuretics is the cornerstone therapy in patients who are fluid overloaded (wet).
- I,B ● Intravenous (i.v.) frusemide 40 - 100mg is the diuretic of choice.¹¹⁴ The dose should be individualised depending on the severity of the clinical condition. Patients who have already been on diuretics or have chronic renal disease, may require a higher dose.
 - Further doses can be adjusted according to response, blood pressure, and renal function.

- Target 0.5 - 1kg decrease in body weight/day when the patient is volume overloaded. Less than 0.5kg of weight loss/day may indicate inadequate diuretic dose or diuretic resistance.
- To date, there has been no difference between continuous infusion or bolus dosing of frusemide for all-cause mortality, length of hospital stay and electrolyte disturbance, but continuous infusion was superior to bolus administration with regard to diuretic effect, safety profile and reduction in brain natriuretic peptide.¹¹⁵⁻¹¹⁸

8.1.4.3. Vasodilators

- Vasodilators can confer symptomatic relief and an improvement in haemodynamics but there is, however, a lack of data to draw any firm conclusions concerning their effects on CV outcome data.^{119,120}

- **Nitrates :**

I,B

- Nitrates are the most widely studied vasodilator.¹¹⁹⁻¹²⁴

I,C

- They are most useful if there is concomitant myocardial ischaemia, severe hypertension or aortic or mitral regurgitation.
- They should be considered if the BP is adequate (SBP > 100mmHg).
- It should be administered preferably intravenously for ease of titration.
- Patients should be closely monitored for hypotension. This commonly occurs with concomitant diuretic therapy.

IIa,B

- The combination of i.v. nitrate and low dose frusemide was shown in a small study to be more efficacious than high dose diuretic treatment alone.¹²³

IIb,C

- Extreme caution should be exercised in patients with aortic and mitral stenosis.

III,C

- Nitrates are contraindicated in severe valvular stenosis.

- **Nitroprusside:**

IIa,C

- This is most useful in AHF due to hypertensive emergencies and acute valvular regurgitation.

IIa,B

- Sodium nitroprusside would be useful in patients not responsive to nitrates.¹²⁵
- Patients should be closely monitored for hypotension preferably using an intra-arterial line.

8.1.4.5 Inotropes (Table 9, Page 57)

IIb,B

- Inotropes are not routinely administered in patients with an adequate BP.^{126,127}
- They are indicated in the presence of persistent signs of hypoperfusion (hypotension and low cardiac output cold patients) despite an adequate filling status.

IIb,B

➤ Dopamine infusion:

- ◆ Low dose at < 2 - 3mcg/kg/min to improve renal flow and promote diuresis.¹²⁸
- ◆ The combination of low dose dopamine and low dose frusemide was as effective as high-dose furosemide but associated with less worsening of renal function.^{118,128} There was however, no difference in the CV outcomes.¹¹⁸

IIb,B

➤ Dobutamine infusion:

- ◆ Started at 2 - 5mcg/kg/minute and titrated by 1 - 2mcg/kg/minute increments at 30 minute intervals until the desired clinical and haemodynamic response is attained.
- ◆ Dobutamine improved cardiac output but did not reduce pulmonary capillary wedge pressure or hospital stay. It was associated with significant ventricular tachyarrhythmias.^{127,129,130}

IIb,B

➤ Noradrenaline infusion:

- ◆ It was as efficacious as dopamine in terms of 28 day mortality but safer especially in the subset of patients with cardiogenic shock.^{131,132}
- ◆ The combination of noradrenaline-dobutamine appeared to be associated with more favorable haemodynamics and a safer strategy than adrenaline alone.¹³³

IIa,B

IIa,B

8.1.4.6 Morphine

- i.v. 1 - 3mg bolus (repeated if necessary, up to a maximum of 10mg). It reduces pulmonary venous congestion although its effect on venodilation has actually been shown to be minimal.¹³⁴

IIb,B

- May reduce anxiety and dyspnoea however due to paucity of data, routine use cannot be recommended.^{135,136}
- Dose-dependent side effects include nausea, hypotension, bradycardia and respiratory depression.
- Consider co-administrating intravenous antiemetics (metoclopramide 10mg or prochlorperazine 12.5mg).

8.1.5 Response to therapy

Response should be assessed continuously using the following parameters:

- Symptoms and signs
- Vital signs
 - Oxygen saturation
 - Heart rate
 - Blood pressure
 - Respiratory rate
 - Urine output
 - Body weight
- Investigations
 - Renal function tests
 - Serum potassium, sodium and magnesium
 - Invasive haemodynamic monitoring may be considered in patients who despite pharmacological treatment present refractory symptoms (particularly with hypotension and hypoperfusion). This includes:
 - ◆ Arterial pressure line
 - ◆ Central venous pressure line and pulmonary artery catheter. This would allow a more accurate assessment of the fluid status of the patient and allow better titration of medications. However use of pulmonary artery catheters did not confer additional benefit beyond clinical assessment on CV outcomes.¹³⁷⁻¹³⁹

IIb,B

An adequate response would be reflected by all of the following:

- An improvement in the patient's clinical condition and symptoms,
- Warm peripheries,
- Decrease in his heart rate,
- An improvement in his oxygen saturation and
- An improvement in the urine output.

Generally, a SBP \geq 90mmHg would be considered adequate if the patient has all of the following:

- Feels well,
- Has good tissue perfusion as shown by the absence of giddiness, warm skin ***and***
- Stable renal function with good urine flow.

If the blood pressure is low at initial presentation (SBP < 100mmHg) or drops during treatment :

Suggest (see Table 9, Page 57)

- Ila,B ● Noradrenaline infusion^{131,132} - initial inotrope and if BP is still low, add:
- Ilb,B ● Dopamine infusion¹³¹
- I,C ● Avoid vasodilators (nitrates, nitroprusside) and morphine until the blood pressure has stabilised.
- I,C ● Over diuresis or hypovolaemia - correct accordingly. In Right Ventricular (RV) infarction, the hypotension may respond to volume loading.

Other measures

- I,C ● Intubation and mechanical ventilation
- Ila,C ● Correction of acidosis
- Ilb,C ● Invasive haemodynamic monitoring
- Intra-aortic balloon counterpulsation (IABP):
 - Ila,B ➤ Would be useful in patients who are not responding optimally to medical therapy as a bridge to definitive treatment. IABP would be particularly useful in patients with intractable myocardial ischaemia or acute mitral regurgitation.^{140,141}
 - III,C ➤ In acute MI complicated by cardiogenic shock, IABP has been found to be effective in patients undergoing reperfusion by fibrinolytic therapy. In those undergoing primary PCI, IABP has not been shown to reduce mortality.¹⁴²⁻¹⁴⁴
 - Ila,B ➤ IABP is contraindicated in patients with aortic regurgitation or aortic dissection.

Table 9: Drugs Commonly Used in Acute HF

	Route of Admin	Dosages
Diuretics		
Frusemide	IV	40-100mg Initial dose: New onset AHF and frusemide-naive: 20-40mg Known HF and on oral frusemide: 40-80mg
	Infusion	5-20mg/hour (better than intermittent very high bolus doses)
Vasodilators		
Nitroglycerin	Infusion	5-200mcg/min
Isosorbide dinitrate	Infusion	1-10mg/hr
Nitroprusside	Infusion	0.1-5mcg/kg/min
Inotropes		
Noradrenaline	Infusion	0.02-1mcg/kg/min till desired blood pressure is attained
Dopamine	Infusion	< 2-3mcg/kg/min - renal arterial vasodilation 2-5mcg/kg/min - inotropic doses 5-15mcg/kg/min - peripheral vasoconstriction
Dobutamine	Infusion	2-20mcg/kg/min
Adrenaline	Infusion	0.05-0.5µg/kg/min

- **Ventricular Assist Devices (VAD)** - would be useful as a bridge in patients for whom recovery from AHF is expected or for whom heart transplant is an option.¹⁴⁵⁻¹⁴⁷

There are other agents such as tolvaptan, levosimendan and nesiritide which have shown symptomatic improvement in AHF but have been associated with either neutral or an increase in adverse events.¹⁴⁸⁻¹⁵¹

8.1.6 Conversion to oral therapy and discharge

Following adequate response to intravenous therapy, the patient should be converted to optimal oral medications. (See Flow Chart III, Page 31)

I,B

- Diuretics^{114,152}
 - Oral diuretics may be commenced following resolution of symptoms of congestion and the patient achieving his "dry weight".
 - The initial dose of oral diuretics required is generally higher than the intravenous dose since the oral version of frusemide has approximately 50% bioavailability compared with the i.v. preparation.¹⁵³
 - The dose at discharge needs to be individualised.

I,A

- ACE-I/ARB^{9,10,154,155}
 - Oral Renin Angiotensin System (RAS) blockers may be commenced at admission if the initial BP is adequate (systolic BP > 120mmHg).
 - In all other cases, it is best to defer for at least 24 hours till the BP is stable.
 - If the patient is already on a RAS blocker, it is advisable to stop it for at least 24 hours if the BP is low. It can be recommenced at a lower dose once the BP is stable. If the BP is adequate (systolic BP > 120mmHg), it can be continued at the same dose.
 - The dose should be uptitrated depending on the BP and renal function.

I,A

- β -blockers¹⁵⁶⁻¹⁶¹
 - It is advisable to commence oral β -blockers if the BP is adequate and the patient is no longer congested i.e. his lungs are clear and there is no more oedema.
 - If already on a β -blocker, this can be continued depending on the patient's symptoms and haemodynamics.

I,A

- MRA¹⁶²⁻¹⁶⁴
 - These can be commenced at admission. Renal function and potassium levels need to be monitored.

- ARNI

IIa,B

- At present, there is inadequate data to recommend it as first line in AHF.
- There is data from one study at present, that suggests in-hospital initiation of this drug in patients with AHF in lieu of ACE-I is safe.

The patient should be observed for at least 24 hours for the stability of symptoms, weight and haemodynamics prior to discharge. The follow-up plans must be tailored according to the availability of facilities and expertise to manage the patient on outpatient basis. (See Section 9 Organisation of Care, Page 110)

8.1.7 Deep vein thrombosis (DVT) prophylaxis

IIa,C

HF patients especially if they are bed-bound for protracted periods are at risk for DVT. Prophylactic measures include:

- TED stockings
- Direct oral anticoagulants (DOAC)
- Unfractionated or low molecular weight heparin.

8.1.8 Special situations

- **Myocardial Ischaemia / Infarction:**
 - Reversible myocardial ischaemia causing AHF needs early recognition, rapid stabilisation and referral for urgent coronary angiography.
 - In acute MI, reperfusion therapy by fibrinolytic or primary Percutaneous Coronary Intervention (PCI) may significantly improve or prevent AHF.
 - Long term management strategy should include adequate coronary revascularisation, antiplatelet therapy, ACE-I and/or ARB, β -blockers and statins.
- **Hypertensive Emergency:**
 - Typically presenting as “flash pulmonary oedema” with hypertensive crisis.
 - Systolic LV function tends to be normal.
 - The blood pressure needs to be reduced relatively quickly.
 - This is best achieved with parenteral drugs such as intravenous nitrates or nitroprusside.
 - No attempt should be made to restore “normal” values of BP as this may cause deterioration of organ perfusion.
 - Look for secondary causes of hypertension such as renal artery stenosis and pheochromocytoma.
- **Valvular Heart Disease:**
 - AHF can be caused by valvular conditions such as acute mitral or aortic valve incompetence or stenosis, bacterial endocarditis, aortic dissection and prosthetic valve thrombosis.
 - Vasodilator therapy would be beneficial in acute valvular regurgitation, but is contraindicated in severe valvular stenosis.
 - Early access to echocardiography is crucial for the diagnosis and management.
 - Percutaneous intervention such as mitral valve commissurotomy can be life saving in patients with severe mitral stenosis.

- **Arrhythmias:**
 - Unstable tachy - or bradyarrhythmias need to be identified and treated appropriately e.g. electrical or pharmacological cardioversion or temporary pacemaker.
- **Renal Failure:**
 - AHF and renal failure can co-exist and either may give rise to the other.
 - Renal failure influences the response to drug therapy.¹⁶⁵ In these patients with refractory fluid retention, continuous ultrafiltration may be considered. (See Section 8.5.6, Page 103)

8.1.8 Cardiogenic Shock

Cardiogenic shock carries a very high mortality rate. The In hospital mortality was > 70% decades ago but recently improved at 27-51% with current therapy and management.^{166,167}

Features include:

- SBP < 90mmHg not improved with fluid administration.
- Signs of hypoperfusion - cold extremities, altered mental status, restlessness.
- Reduced urine output (< 20cc/hour).
- Cardiac index* of < 1.8 L/min/m² without support or 2.2 L/min/m² with support.
- PCWP ≥ 15mmHg
- Serum Lactate > 2.0 mmol/L.

*cardiac index = cardiac output/body surface area

It is important to establish the aetiology and institute appropriate resuscitative therapy immediately. An ECG should be obtained and continuous monitoring begun. Venous access should be secured, preferably via central venous cannulation (subclavian or internal jugular).

Wherever possible, these patients should be transferred to a tertiary centre with PCI capable facilities.

Important considerations are:

- **Ventricular Function:**
 - Echocardiography would allow rapid determination of LV function and mechanical causes (e.g. acute valve regurgitation, acute septal rupture, cardiac tamponade) of cardiogenic shock.

- In the presence of preserved LV systolic function, other causes of shock such as sepsis and intravascular volume depletion should be considered.
- **Intra Vascular Volume Status:**
 - An absolute or relative reduction in LV filling pressures may be present.
 - This may be due to excessive diuretic or vasodilator therapy, concomitant gastro-intestinal bleed or RV infarction.
 - In the absence of signs of LV failure, fluid challenge with normal saline should be administered. Judicious administration of fluids (usual recommended volume: 100-200 mls) tapered to clinical response and signs of fluid overload.
 - Invasive haemodynamic monitoring would be useful to guide fluid therapy.
- **Arrhythmias:**
 - Should be identified and appropriate treatment such as cardioversion or pacing instituted.
 - Resistant arrhythmias would require antiarrhythmic drug therapy or radiofrequency ablation.

In the presence of cardiogenic shock or near shock (hypoperfusion with adequate blood pressure) treatment would include the following:

- Inotropic support: Noradrenaline and/or dopamine. If blood pressure is adequate in the setting of near shock, dobutamine may be used.
- Mechanical device support: IABP or LVAD.¹⁴²⁻¹⁴⁷

Key messages:

- AHF may present as:
 - Pulmonary and/or peripheral oedema (“wet”- volume overload).
 - Low output state - shock (“dry”- usually due to pump failure).
 - Combination of pulmonary oedema and a low output state.

Key Recommendation # 5:

- In Acute HF, it is important to:
 - Rapidly recognise the condition.
 - Identify and stabilise haemodynamics.
 - Maintain oxygenation and perfusion of the vital organs.
 - Relieve clinical symptoms and signs.
 - Identify and treat the underlying cause and precipitating/aggravating factors.
- After initial clinical assessment, management should be instituted as in Flow Chart II, Page 29.

8.2 CHRONIC HEART FAILURE DUE TO HF_rEF

Goals of management of HF include:

- Reducing symptoms, improving functional capacity and quality of life.
- Preventing hospitalisations and unplanned hospital visits.
- Improving patient survival.

8.2.1 NON-PHARMACOLOGICAL MEASURES**8.2.1.1 Education**

I,B

HF patients and their family members should be educated on the definition, causes, signs, symptoms and the progressive nature of the disease. They should:

- Be educated on self care management.
- Recognise the changes in their signs and symptoms - a sudden weight gain - more than 2kg in 3 days is a sign of worsening HF.
- Know when to contact their healthcare provider.
- Understand the indication, dosing, side effects and drug interaction of each medication they are prescribed.
- Be warned about self-medication and potential drug interactions.
- Adhere to treatment and be informed of the potential complications resulting from non-adherence to prescribed medication.
- Provide prognostic information to enable patients to make realistic decisions and plans. This is important in patients with severe HF. Chronic HF is a highly lethal disease, more lethal than several common malignancies.

In advanced HF, treatment options must be discussed tactfully and realistically with the patient and family.

8.2.1.2 Exercise training

I,B

Several systematic reviews and meta-analyses support exercise training as an integral part of the non-pharmacological treatment of HF.¹⁶⁸⁻¹⁷²

Exercise training:

- Is safe in patients with chronic stable HF.¹⁶⁸⁻¹⁷³
- In patients with HF_rEF, is associated with a trend towards reduction in all-cause mortality.¹⁶⁸
- In patients with HF_pEF, the clinical data is sparse. Small trials show that exercise training leads to an improvement in exercise capacity and quality of life.¹⁷⁴⁻¹⁷⁶

Exercise-based rehabilitation:

- Reduced the risk of hospital admissions.^{168,171,173}
- Improved health related quality of life.(HRQoL)^{168,169,171}
- Enhanced exercise capacity.^{169,172}

Regular aerobic exercises are encouraged in NYHA I – III patients. These include:

- Walking, treadmill, stationary bicycle as well as swimming with a target goal of 5 days per week, 30 minutes per session.

Moderate intensity aerobic interval may be incorporated for selected patients.

For more details, refer to the 2017 Malaysian Clinical Practice Guidelines on Primary and Secondary Prevention of Cardiovascular Disease, 1st Ed.

8.2.1.3 Diet and nutrition

Ila,B

It has been widely accepted that sodium intake has to be restricted in patients with HF especially in those with symptoms. However, clinical evidence to support this has been sparse and conflicting.¹⁷⁷⁻¹⁸² Excessive salt and fluid restriction can lead to intravascular depletion resulting in activation of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone and sympathetic systems leading to deleterious tachycardia.¹⁸³

The current recommendation is to avoid adding salt and flavouring sauces such as soya sauce, tomato ketchup and chilli sauce while cooking or at the table. Refer to Appendix II, Page 117 on salt content of common Malaysian food.

A good balanced diet plays an an important role to prevent energy depletion which can lead to cardiac cachexia and malnutrition.

8.2.1.4 Fluid restriction

Ila,C

The current evidence on fluid restriction is mixed.¹⁸²⁻¹⁸⁵ As with salt, excessive fluid restriction can also lead to worse outcomes.¹⁸²⁻¹⁸⁵ This may also be due to reverse causality - sicker patients tend to take less salt and water.

Fluid intake should be individualised. A general recommendation is 1-1.5 litres per day in patients with normal renal function.

8.2.1.5 Lifestyle measures

These include:

- Weight monitoring - Patients should be encouraged to monitor their own weight. In obese patients, weight loss should be emphasised.
- Alcohol - This should be avoided in patients with HF as it can lead to acute decompensation.¹⁸⁶ Patients with alcoholic cardiomyopathy must abstain from alcohol.
- Smoking should be stopped.⁶⁰

8.2.1.6 Sexual activity, pregnancy and contraception

Physiological and psychological changes in patients with HF often result in sexual dysfunction.¹⁸⁷ These patients, in turn, often report a lower Health-related quality of life (HRQoL).¹⁸⁸ This problem is further compounded by their unmet need for information on sexual activities from their health care providers.^{187,189}

Ila,B

It is imperative that enquiries on sexual activities or dysfunction be addressed to provide a holistic approach to patient care.¹⁹⁰ The physician must take over the initial approach since patients are often embarrassed to initiate the topic. Some helpful tools to initiate the conversation include:

- PLISSIT (permission, limited information, specific suggestion and intensive therapy).¹⁹¹
- Needs of Sexual Counselling Scale for Chronic Heart Failure (NSCS-CHF)¹⁸⁷
- Sexual Adjustment Scale (SAS).¹⁸⁷

Patients should be taught:

- To pay attention to their symptoms of HF.
- The potential dangers and how to manage them when they occur during sexual activities.
- To defer sexual activities if in NYHA III-IV.
- Not to resume until his/her heart condition stabilises.
- To modify sexual practices to accommodate impaired effort tolerance.

HF patients need to be told that certain cardiac medications have important side effects and drug interactions :

- Nitrates may dangerously interact with drugs for erectile dysfunction - phosphodiesterase-5-inhibitors (Viagra, Cialis, Levitra).
- β -blockers, may contribute towards worsening erectile dysfunction but it is important that HF patients remain compliant to them.

I,C Patients with LVEF < 30% and those with NYHA III and IV should be advised against pregnancy because of high maternal mortality.^{192,193} If pregnant, termination of pregnancy should be considered.¹⁹³

When pregnancy is contraindicated, then appropriate contraceptive advice becomes paramount to the safety of the patient by preventing unwanted pregnancy. The World Health Organization Medical Eligibility criteria (WHO-MEC) for contraceptive use offers guidance in women with specific medical conditions.¹⁹⁴

Contraceptive counselling should begin early. In the absence of randomised controlled studies, the choice of contraceptive method is almost always based on expert opinion of the attending cardiologists, obstetrician and the patient's choice. In most cases, the ease of use and efficacy of the progestogen-only long-acting reversible contraceptive methods make them a good method for patients with CVD.^{193,195} (Appendix III and IV, Pages 118 and 119)

8.2.1.7 Sleep disorders

Causes of sleep disturbances in HF include pulmonary congestion, nocturnal diuresis due to diuretics and anxiety. Up to 53% of adults with HF have been shown to have either central sleep apnoea (CSA) or OSA.¹⁹⁶⁻¹⁹⁸ OSA or CSA or combination of both, is commonly known as sleep disordered breathing (SDB).

OSA may occur in normal population or in HF patients, while CSA, which may present as Cheyne-Stokes respiration, is more uniquely associated with HF.¹⁹⁹ Independent predictors of SDB include older age, male gender, obesity, low ejection fraction and the presence of AF.^{196,197} Polysomnography (PSG) is the gold standard in diagnosing OSA and CSA. However, a screening using overnight pulse oximetry is useful to preselect a patient for PSG.

Not only does SDB affect HRQoL, it leads to harmful effects on cardiac function, arrhythmias and poorer prognosis due to the repetitive hypoxaemia, hypercapnia and swings in blood pressure and intrathoracic pressure.

I,C OSA patients are encouraged to lose weight.

IIa,B CPAP improves daytime sleepiness for OSA patients.¹⁹⁶ In HF patients with OSA, CPAP have been shown to improve HRQoL, LVEF function and HF symptoms.¹⁹⁶ However, none of the evidence so far can suggest improvement in terms of cardiovascular or all-cause mortality.¹⁹⁶

Treatment of CSA in HF patients remains uncertain.¹⁹⁴ To date, trials using a CPAP or adaptive servo-ventilation in patients with HF have not been shown to be beneficial.^{70-72,200}

As CSA tends to worsen when HF worsens, optimising medical therapy remains the main strategy in CSA.

8.2.1.8 Psychosocial support

During the course of HF, psychological problems tend to occur that may be due to change in lifestyle, medication therapy, implanted device and other procedures. Social support reduces stress and helps in maintaining a healthy lifestyle and compliance to treatment. Absence of social support has been associated with higher hospitalisation.²⁰¹⁻²⁰³

I,C

Thus, it is important that family members and carers are included during counselling sessions. Depressive symptoms may affect adherence and should prompt referral to specialist for psychological support.

Key Recommendation # 6:

- In Chronic HF, non-pharmacological measures play an important role and it is important to :
 - Educate patient and family about the disease, treatment options and prognosis.
 - Encourage lifestyle measures.
 - Individualise fluid intake - A general recommendation is 1-1.5 litres per day in patients with normal renal function.
 - Provide advice regarding sexual activities and pregnancy.

8.2.2 PHARMACOLOGICAL MANAGEMENT

Drug therapy is the mainstay of management of Chronic HF as outlined in Flow Chart III, Page 31. For grading of recommendations and levels of evidence, see Table 3, Page 33.

The majority of patients with HF_rEF, regardless of symptom severity, require lifelong optimal medical treatment (OMT) which would include an ACE-I, β-blocker and a Mineralocorticoid Receptor Antagonist (MRA), unless contraindicated. An ARB shall be given to those who are intolerant to ACE-I.

Drugs should be initiated at a low dose and uptitrated to the target doses, or

at least up to maximum tolerated doses. Drugs with less proven survival benefits (e.g. diuretics) should be re-evaluated for reduction in dosage when OMT is not well tolerated due to a low BP. Alternatively, administering drugs at different timing may be considered for those with symptomatic hypotension.

Wherever possible, OMT should be continued during an acute illness. If discontinued, they should be restarted as soon as the condition has stabilised.

- III,C Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) should be avoided in patients with HF.²⁰⁴

A) Diuretics (Table 10, Page 68)

- I,B Diuretics are indicated in all patients with HF in whom there are signs and symptoms of fluid retention.¹⁵²

The dose of diuretic used is variable and dependent on individual requirements. In the presence of severe congestive HF and in the acute decompensated stage, oral diuretic therapy may be ineffective. Intravenous therapy may be preferred.

Adequate doses of diuretic should be used. However, these patients should be monitored closely as overdiuresis can cause intravascular volume depletion leading to hypotension and deterioration of renal function. Hypokalaemia is a common problem with diuretic use and oral potassium supplementation is usually necessary.

Patient should be educated on 'dry weight' management and advised to record their daily weight. If there is a consistent increase in weight of more than 2kg in 3 days, patients should be educated to self-adjust their diuretic (frusemide) dose together with restriction of their fluid intake until their "dry weight" is regained. However, if the weight increase is associated with worsening symptoms or fails to respond to these measures, the patient should seek medical help immediately.

The diuretic of choice in patients with fluid overload is a loop diuretic i.e. frusemide. The goal is a reduction of body weight of about 1kg/day.

Thiazide diuretics may be preferred in patients with hypertensive HF and mild fluid retention. For most patients however, a loop diuretic is often required.

Responsiveness to loop diuretics diminishes as HF progresses. Uptitration of loop diuretics may be a preferred strategy if diuresis is inadequate. Alternatively, bumetanide, a second generation loop diuretic, may be used because of its more predictable absorption.

IIb,B

Combination of thiazides and loop diuretics may also be used as these drugs work synergistically to improve diuresis.²⁰⁵⁻²⁰⁷ However, this combination has been associated with hypokalaemia, hyponatremia, worsening renal function and increased mortality.^{207,208}

Metolazone is a once-daily oral thiazide diuretic. It is given in combination with a loop diuretic in patients with severe HF and refractory oedema.^{207,209} At present, there is inadequate data to show that it is superior to the other thiazides in this setting.^{207,210} It may also be used in patients with refractory oedema and advanced renal failure.²¹¹⁻²¹³

When combination therapy is used, there can be a marked diuresis.²⁰⁷ Careful monitoring of fluid and electrolyte balance and BP, is essential.

Table 10: Diuretics Used In Heart Failure

	Route of Administration	Usual Daily Dose
LOOP DIURETICS		
Furosemide	IV / Oral	20-80mg
Bumetanide	IV / Oral	0.5-2mg
THIAZIDES		
Hydrochlorothiazide	Oral	12.5-50mg
Metolazone	Oral	2.5-10mg
MINERALOCORTICOID ANTAGONISTS		
Spirolactone	Oral	12.5-50mg
Eplerenone	Oral	25-50mg

B) Inhibitors of the Renin Angiotensin System - Angiotensin Converting Enzyme Inhibitors (ACE-I) and Angiotensin Receptor Blockers (ARB) (Table 11, Page 70)

I,A

ACE-I improve survival and quality of life in all classes of HF.^{9,10,154,155,214} Hence, this first line drug should be given to all HF/EF patients. There are no differences among available ACE-Is in their effects on symptoms or survival.¹⁵⁴

I,A ARBs are also indicated in HF r EF in ACE-I intolerant patients.²¹⁵⁻²¹⁷

IIa,B ARBs are also indicated in HF r EF. There is no difference between ACE-I and ARBs in terms of CV outcomes such as mortality and HF hospitalisation.²¹⁸ ARBs are however better tolerated because of their better side effect profile.²¹⁹

IIa,B In patients post MI with impaired LV function, the ARB, Valsartan, was found to be as effective as captopril.²²⁰

In the initiation of ACE-I/ARB, the following should be considered:

- Patients with underlying low SBP (< 100mgHg) and/or elevated serum creatinine (> 250 μ mol/L) should be initiated with a low-dose of ACE-I/ARB cautiously.
- Avoid excessive diuresis before treatment. If patients are on large doses of diuretics, the BP and renal function should be monitored.
- Start with a low dose. Patients should not remain on the initial low dose indefinitely. The dose should be increased gradually to the target dose (Table 11, Page 70) or the maximum tolerated dose.
- Orthostatic hypotension should be avoided.
- Renal profile should be checked periodically. Serum creatinine or estimated Glomerular Filtrate Rate (eGFR) may increase up to 30% from baseline at 7-14 days, after introduction of either an ACE-I or an ARB. Dose adjustments is not required if the increase stabilises at \leq 30%. The renal function should however be monitored periodically on a regular basis.

There is no significant difference in rates of hypotension, hyperkalaemia, or renal dysfunction between ACE-Is and ARBs.

ACE-I intolerance denotes the presence of a bothersome cough (most common, incidence:10-20%) or the experience of angioedema (uncommon, incidence <1%) with ACE-I therapy. Patients with this condition may be switched to an ARB, although, some may still develop angioedema.²²²

III,A Routine combined use of both ACE-I and an ARB should be avoided, as this combination causes more adverse effects (hypotension, hyperkalaemia, and renal dysfunction).^{220,223}

Table 11: Recommended Doses of ACE-I and ARBs used in HF

Drug	Initial Daily Dose(s)	Target Dose(s)
ACE-I		
Captopril	6.25mg BD	50mg TDS
Enalapril	2.5mg OD	10-20mg BD
Lisinopril	2.5-5mg OD	20-40mg OD
Perindopril	2mg OD	8-16mg OD
Ramipril	2.5mg OD	10mg OD
ARBs		
Candesartan	4-8mg OD	32mg OD
Losartan	25-50mg OD	50-150mg OD
Valsartan	40mg OD	160mg BD

C) β -Blockers (Table 12, Page 71)

I,A

Large clinical trials have shown that β -blockers reduce morbidity and mortality in patients with NYHA Class II-IV, of both ischaemic and non-ischaemic aetiology, on top of standard therapy.^{156-161,240-226}

However, objective improvement in cardiac function might not be apparent for 6-12 months after β -blocker initiation.

Patients with AHF should be clinically stabilised and preferably no longer in overt HF (i.e. lungs are clear), before β -blocker initiation. Those in NYHA III-IV require close monitoring.

Patients who decompensate and are admitted in AHF should be maintained on the same dose of β -blockers unless the clinical condition (hypotension or significant bradycardia) warrants a temporary reduction in the dose. After the patient has been stabilised, an attempt should be made to uptitrate to the target or maximum tolerated dose of β -blockers.

The dose of the β -blocker may be doubled gradually every 2-4 weeks. The dose of diuretics may need to be adjusted at β -blocker initiation or uptitration as patients may experience transient fluid retention.

Contraindications include:

- Bronchial asthma
- In the presence of atrioventricular (AV) block (e.g. second or third degree heart block without a pacemaker)
- Symptomatic bradycardia or hypotension
- A requirement for β agonist therapy or positive inotropic support.

Initiating therapy with a β -blocker first is non-inferior to the standard approach of starting with an ACE-I.¹⁵⁹ The benefits seen with both these drugs are additive.

Table 12: Recommended Doses of β -Blockers used in HF*

Drug	Initial Daily Dose(s)	Target Dose(s)
Bisoprolol	1.25mg OD	10mg OD
Carvedilol	3.125mg BD	25mg BD (50mg, if > 85kg)
Metoprolol Succinate CR/XL**	12.5-25mg OD	200mg OD
Nebivolol***	1.25mg OD	10mg OD

* Only the above mentioned β -blockers have been shown to improve CV outcomes.

** Currently only metoprolol tartrate is available in Malaysia.

*** One study showed reduction in composite endpoint of death or CV hospitalisation with no reduction in mortality.²²⁶

D) Mineralocorticoid Receptor Antagonists (MRA) (Table 10, Page 68)

I,A

The addition of spironolactone to ACE-I, loop diuretics and digoxin in patients with severe HF reduces mortality and rehospitalisation.¹⁶² Similarly, eplerenone, another MRA, when added to β -blockers and ACE-I in patients with mild HF, has been shown to reduce both morbidity and mortality.^{163,164}

Care should be exercised in patients with renal impairment, especially during an acute dehydrating illness. Serum creatinine and potassium should be monitored regularly especially in high-risk groups. This includes those with:

- Diabetes
- Pre-existing renal impairment and/or
- Older age

Potassium supplements may need to be reduced or discontinued. If despite these measures, hyperkalaemia persists, then the dose of MRA should be

reduced or stopped.

Spironolactone can cause breast enlargement and discomfort in men; this is infrequent with eplerenone.

Table 13: Other Drugs Recommended for HF Management and their Dose Regime

Drug	Initial Daily Dose(s)	Max Dose(s)
ARNI		
Sacubitril/valsartan	50-100mg BID [#]	100-200mg BID
If Channel Inhibitor		
Ivabradine	(2.5-) 5mg BID	7.5mg BID
Others		
Isosorbide dinitrate*	20mg TDS	40mg TDS
Digoxin	0.0625-0.125mg	0.25mg daily

**(PO) Hydralazine-nitrate combination is not available.*

#Consider lower doses and once daily dose in patients with low BP.

E) Angiotensin Receptor Neprilysin Inhibitor (ARNI) (Table 13, Page 72)

ARNI is a combination of an ARB (valsartan) and an inhibitor of neprilysin (sacubitril), an enzyme that degrades natriuretic peptides-bradykinin, adrenomedullin, and other vasoactive peptides.

In a large study comparing the first approved ARNI (valsartan/sacubitril) versus enalapril in symptomatic patients with HF_rEF on an adequate dose of either ACE-I or ARB, ARNI reduced the primary composite endpoint of CV death or HF hospitalisation by a significant 20%.²²⁷ Patients with a serum potassium > 5.2mmol/L, an eGFR < 30ml/min, and symptomatic hypotension with a systolic BP of < 100mmHg were excluded from the trial.²²⁷

The use of an ARNI is associated with hypotension and a low incidence of angioedema. To facilitate initiation and titration, the approved ARNI is available in 3 doses (50mg, 100mg, 200mg).

I,B

ARNI should be considered as a replacement to ACE-I/ARB in patients with HF_rEF who remain symptomatic to decrease CV death, HF hospitalisations, and symptoms. The benefit of this ARNI over an ACE-I, was consistent

regardless of background therapy and irrespective of previous coronary revascularisation or β -blocker dose.²²⁸

ARNI should not be administered:

- Concomitantly with ACE-I or within 36 hours of the last dose of an ACE-I.^{229,230}
- To patients with a history of angioedema.

The tolerability of ARNI and its side effect profile is similar to that of ACE-I or ARB. Laboratory monitoring is also similar. The long term safety of this group of drugs is, however, still not established.²³¹⁻²³³

When initiating an ARNI:

- Initial dosing and rate of titration is dependent on the pre-existing treatment and associated comorbidities. It should, preferably, be individualised.
- When switching between an ACE-I and an ARNI, a washout period of at least 36 hours is required to decrease the risk of angioedema. No washout period is required for conversion between an ARB and an ARNI.

The drug should be uptitrated to the target dose shown to improve important HF outcomes.

In patients taking ARNI, NTproBNP is a more reliable biomarker than BNP. BNP levels may be spuriously elevated as the drug prevents its breakdown.

F) Ivabradine (Table 13, Page 72)

Ivabradine selectively inhibits the *I_f* current in the sinoatrial node, providing heart rate reduction. It has no effect on the ventricular rate in AF.

Ila,B

Ivabradine resulted in a reduction in hospitalisation, improvement in LV function and quality of life without an effect on mortality in patients who are:^{234,235}

- On optimal medical therapy with diuretics, ACE-I, MRA and β -blockers, *and*
- Still symptomatic (NYHA class II-III), *and*
- Having a LVEF \leq 35%, *and*
- Having a resting heart rate of \geq 70 beats /min.

Every effort should be made to achieve target or maximally tolerated doses of β -blockers before initiation of ivabradine. It would be useful in patients who have contraindications to β -blockers or not able to tolerate higher doses of

β -blockers due to its side effect. Ivabradine has no effect on BP or myocardial contractility. It can, however, cause symptomatic bradycardia and visual disturbances.

G) Digoxin

The use of digoxin in HF in the contemporary era remains controversial. It has no proven survival benefits but it relieves symptoms and reduces hospitalisations²³⁶⁻²³⁸ It has a narrow therapeutic range and thus close monitoring of renal function and serum electrolytes (particularly potassium and magnesium levels) is required, prior to initiation of digoxin and periodically during use.

Ila,B Digoxin may be added to OMT and diuretics for patients with HF/EF and in sinus rhythm, who continue to have moderate to severe symptoms.²³⁶⁻²³⁸

Ila,B In patients with AF, combination of digoxin and β -blockers is superior to either agent alone.^{239,240}

Hence, digoxin may be considered in patients with HF and AF in the following situations:

- Rate control is inadequate on β -blockers alone.
- β -blockers are contraindicated.
- Rapid control of the ventricular rate with parenteral drugs is required.

No loading dose is required for the management of chronic HF. Lower doses of digoxin and lower levels of serum digoxin (0.5-0.8ng/ml or 0.65 to 1nmol/L) are efficacious and appear adequate in most patients with compensated HF.²⁴¹⁻²⁴³ The maintenance dose of digoxin may range between 0.0625mg to 0.25mg daily, which may be lower in elderly patients, women and those with renal impairment.

Regular monitoring of digoxin levels is not required other than to assess for toxicity. The levels should not be used to guide dose adjustment in chronic therapy. Digoxin levels may be elevated in the presence of worsening renal function, electrolyte imbalance (hypokalaemia, hypomagnesaemia, or hypocalcaemia) or interacting drugs (e.g. amiodarone), which may lead to atrial and ventricular arrhythmias particularly in the presence of hypokalaemia.

H) Nitrates

- IIa,C** HF symptoms such as orthopnoea, paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea, exercise-induced dyspnoea, or angina may be relieved with the use of nitrates alone, in the form of tablets, sprays, or transdermal patches.

Nitrates are mainly used in AHF. In chronic HF, the trials on nitrates have been in combination with hydralazine.^{244,245} This combination has been shown to improve survival in the African-American population with HF.^{244,245}

Continuous (i.e. around the clock) use should generally be avoided to prevent nitrate tolerance and pseudotolerance.²⁴⁶

I) Antiplatelet and Anticoagulation Therapy

- III,A** There is no role for routine antiplatelet or anticoagulant therapy in patients with HF/EF.²⁴⁷⁻²⁵¹

HF patients with the following risk factors for thromboembolism should be given an appropriate anticoagulant, unless contraindicated:

- I,A** ● AF - This is a common problem among patients with HF. All patients with AF should be given an anticoagulant, unless contraindicated.²⁵²⁻²⁵⁷
- I,C** ● Intracardiac thrombus (except for organised mural thrombus).

J) Antiarrhythmic Drug Therapy

Arrhythmias are common in HF. The more common ones are:

- Atrial fibrillation
- Ventricular tachyarrhythmias
- Bradyarrhythmias

J.1 Atrial fibrillation (AF)

New-onset AF in a patient with established HF is associated with a poor prognosis irrespective of the LVEF.²⁵⁸⁻²⁶⁰ On the other hand, patients who developed AF first, followed by HF usually have a more benign course.²⁵⁹

Persistent ventricular rates > 150bpm may cause an arrhythmia induced HF that resolves with rate and/or rhythm control. (See Section 8.5.4, Page 98)

Patients with AF can be managed by either rate control or rhythm control.²⁶¹⁻²⁶⁴

- **Rate control**

- The optimal resting ventricular rate in patients with AF and HF is unknown, but probably between 75-90/min.²⁶⁵⁻²⁶⁷ Excessive rate control, which may be associated with an increase in pauses, carries a risk.²⁶⁶
- The optimal ventricular rate during exercise is also uncertain, but may be <110/min during light exercise.^{264,267,268}

This can be achieved by using either:

I,A

- β -blockers^{239,240, 268-270} and/or

IIa,B

- Digoxin²⁶⁸

β -blockers are preferred over digoxin as it provides better rate control during exercise and improves morbidity and mortality in patients with HF although the latter effect is attenuated in patients with AF.^{266,271}

IIa,B

Rate control is better when digoxin and β -blockers are used in combination rather than with each drug individually.^{239,240}

In patients with marked congestion who cannot tolerate β -blockers, suggest:

- Oral or intravenous (i.v.) digoxin
- Oral or i.v. amiodarone^{272,273}

- **Rhythm control**

IIa,B

This is indicated in patients intolerant of AF even after rate control. It can be achieved either by pharmacological cardioversion with amiodarone or by elective electrical cardioversion after a period of anticoagulation.²⁶⁸

Sinus rhythm can be maintained by using:²⁶⁸

IIa,B

- Amiodarone or

IIa,A

- Radiofrequency ablation²⁷⁴

J.2 Ventricular Arrhythmias

The exact prevalence of sudden cardiac death (SCD) in patients with HF in the contemporary era is not known. It varies depending on the aetiology of the HF and the LVEF.²⁷⁵ Patients with HF and reduced LVEF (< 30 or 35%) (HF_rEF) account for < 20% of all SCDs.²⁷⁶

SCD is most often due to either sustained ventricular tachycardia (VT) or ventricular fibrillation (VF) although sometimes it may be due to a bradyarrhythmia or electromechanical dissociation.^{277,278} Occasionally rapid supraventricular tachycardias may deteriorate to malignant ventricular tachyarrhythmias.²⁷⁸

The following medications have been shown to reduce the incidence of SCD:

- I,A ➤ **β-blockers:** These agents were shown to reduce SCD in the clinical trials done on patients post MI as well as in the HF trials.²⁷⁹⁻²⁸¹
- IIa,B ➤ **MRA:** have been shown to reduce the incidence of SCD.^{162,163,282}
- IIa,B ➤ **ACE-I:** Analysis of trials done following MI showed that ACE-I reduced SCD.²⁸³⁻²⁸⁶
- IIa,B ➤ **ARNI:** this reduced both sudden cardiac deaths and deaths from worsening HF.²⁸⁷
- IIa,B ➤ **Statins:** have a modest beneficial effect on SCD.²⁸⁸

In addition to the above, in patients with ventricular tachyarrhythmias, the following are important:

- I,C ● Identify contributing factors such as electrolyte disturbances, ischaemia and drugs.
- I,A ● Implantable cardioverter defibrillator (ICD).²⁸⁹⁻²⁹³ (Section 8.2.3.2, Page 79)
- IIa,B ● Antiarrhythmic drug therapy with amiodarone can be considered as adjunctive therapy in patients with ICD to reduce the number of shocks and in patients who are not candidates for ICD.²⁹⁴
- IIa,C ● Radiofrequency ablation may be considered in the event of VT storms.

- I,C Patients with significant bradyarrhythmias, trifascicular blocks and high-degree Atrio-ventricular (AV) blocks should be considered for pacemaker therapy.²⁹⁵

Prior to implanting a conventional pacemaker, the need for an ICD or Cardiac Resynchronisation Therapy (CRT) device should be considered.

K) Calcium Channel Blockers (CCBs)

- III,A Routine use of CCBs is not recommended in patients with HFrEF as they do not confer any morbidity or mortality benefit but worsen HF outcomes.²⁹⁶⁻³⁰¹ Diltiazem, verapamil and nifedipine should be avoided.

However, amlodipine and felodipine may be considered for other indications such as persistent hypertension despite use of OMT.^{300,302}

Key Recommendation # 7:

- Management of chronic HF due to HFrEF is as in Flow Chart III, Page 31.
- Pharmacological Agents that should be administered are those that have been shown to improve survival in HFrEF and these include:
 - ACE-I/ARB if ACE-I intolerant
 - ARNI
 - β -blockers
 - MRA
- The doses of these medications should be slowly up-titrated to the maximal tolerated doses. (Tables 10-13, Pages 68,70-72)

8.2.3 DEVICE THERAPY IN HEART FAILURE

8.2.3.1 Cardiac Resynchronisation Therapy (CRT)

Patients who remain symptomatic (NYHA class II-III) despite OMT should be considered for CRT.

CRT has been shown to improve symptoms, hospitalisations and mortality, though up to 30% of patients may be non-responders.³⁰³⁻³⁰⁷

Patients with all of the following criteria can be considered for CRT.^{304,305,308-312}

- Sinus rhythm
- LVEF \leq 35%
- Left Bundle Branch Block (LBBB)

- QRS duration on resting 12-lead ECG:

IIa,B

➤ ≥ 129-149ms

I,A

➤ ≥ 150ms

Mechanical ventricular dyssynchrony is no longer a criteria in selecting patients for CRT.^{313,314}

Patients with AF are less likely to respond to CRT. They may be considered for CRT together with atrio-ventricular node ablation to improve biventricular pacing.³¹⁵⁻³¹⁷

Regular monitoring of these patients is mandatory after device implantation to adjust medical therapies and reprogram the device as necessary.

8.2.3.2 Implantable Cardioverter Defibrillator (ICD)

SCD in patients with HF is often due to VF or VT. This risk can be reduced with the implantation of an ICD.

An ICD can be implanted as secondary prevention in patients with previous sudden cardiac arrest or documented sustained ventricular arrhythmias.²⁸⁹⁻²⁹³

It should be considered in patients who fulfil the eligibility criteria, who otherwise have good clinical function and prognosis (life expectancy of more than 1 year) to improve their survival.

Secondary prevention:

The following should be considered for implantation of ICD:²⁸⁹⁻²⁹³

I,A

- Patients resuscitated from SCD due to ventricular fibrillation or haemodynamically unstable sustained ventricular tachycardia. These cardiac arrest survivors have a high risk of recurrent events and implantation of an ICD has been shown to reduce mortality.

IIa,B

- Patients with chronic HF and LVEF ≤ 35% who experience syncope of unclear origin have a high risk of subsequent SCD.

I,A

- Prior MI and LVEF ≤ 40% with non-sustained VT **AND** inducible sustained VT or VF during an electrophysiological (EP) study.^{318,319}

Primary prevention (prophylactic ICD implantation)

Prophylactic ICD implantation to reduce the risk of SCD may be considered in patients with:

- Prior MI and at least 40 days after an MI and 3 months after revascularisation by PCI or CABG and:

IIa,B

- LVEF \leq 30% with no HF symptoms (NYHA class I).³²⁰

I,B

- LVEF \leq 35% with mild to moderate HF symptoms (NYHA class II-III).³²¹

- Non-ischaemic cardiomyopathy LVEF \leq 35% and:

I,B

- Mild to moderate HF symptoms (NYHA class II-III).³²²⁻³²⁴

IIa,B

- No HF symptoms (NYHA class I).³²²⁻³²⁴

The decision regarding the balance of potential risks and benefits of ICD implantation for an individual patient remains complex.

Key Recommendation # 8:

In patients with HF_rEF, Device therapy should be considered in patients who fulfil the eligibility criteria, who otherwise have good clinical function and prognosis (life expectancy of more than 1 year) to improve their survival.

- CRT can be considered in patients with **all** of the following criteria:
 - Sinus rhythm
 - LVEF \leq 35%
 - LBBB
 - QRS duration \geq 150ms
- An ICD is indicated for secondary prevention in:
 - Patients resuscitated from SCD due to ventricular fibrillation or haemodynamically unstable sustained ventricular tachycardia.
 - Patients with chronic HF and LVEF \leq 35% who experience syncope of unclear origin.
 - Prior MI and LVEF \leq 40% with non-sustained VT **AND** inducible sustained VT or VF during an EP study.

8.2.4 SURGERY FOR HEART FAILURE

Patients with HF should undergo surgery if the pathology causing the HF is amenable to surgical treatment. However the decision to subject a patient to surgery should take into account the functional status, prognosis and comorbid conditions of the patient.

Surgical procedures include the following:

A) Revascularisation Procedures

Patients with CAD and HF may benefit from revascularisation by either PCI or CABG, particularly if they have angina and anatomy that is suitable for revascularisation (left main stem or triple vessel disease). The benefit of revascularisation is likely to be more in patients with more severe left ventricular dysfunction, severe CAD with angina, viable myocardium and reversible ischaemia.

The STICH extension trial found a lower risk of total mortality in the CABG group compared to medical therapy in patients with severe HF (LVEF < 35%) and significant CAD, after a median follow-up of 9.8 years.³²⁵ There was also a significant reduction in the risk of cardiovascular (CV) death and the combined outcome of all cause death and CV hospitalisations in the CABG group. There was an early risk of mortality following CABG, but benefits of CABG was seen after 2 years, and this benefit in favour of CABG was seen whether viability or angina was present or absent.

Ila,B

Coronary revascularisation (by either CABG or PCI) should be considered in patients with HF and suitable coronary anatomy.³²⁵

B) Valve Surgery

Patients with HF and severe mitral regurgitation, non-ischaemic in origin, may have symptomatic improvement after mitral valve surgery. If the LVEF < 30%, mitral valve repair is preferred as mitral valve replacement is associated with poorer outcomes.³²⁶

Patients with LV systolic dysfunction undergoing surgical coronary revascularisation who also have severe mitral regurgitation secondary to ventricular dilatation may be considered for concomitant mitral valve repair or replacement.^{327,328}

IIb,B

In patients with moderate to severe MR and who are not surgical candidates, the use of mitralclip has shown mixed results.^{329,330}

C) LV Reduction Surgery

LV aneurysmectomy may be considered in patients with a large discrete LV aneurysm who develop HF, angina pectoris, thromboembolism, and tachyarrhythmias due to the aneurysm.³³¹

III,B

Patients with HF undergoing surgical coronary revascularisation, who have areas of LV dyskinesia or akinesia do not benefit from concomitant LV reduction surgery.³³²

D) LV Assist Devices

Left ventricular assist devices have been used to:

- Bridge patients with HF to heart transplant.
- Support patients with acute severe myocarditis with a view to recovery.
- Provide long term haemodynamic support in eligible patients (destination therapy).³³³⁻³³⁵

Patients awaiting heart transplant who have become refractory to medical therapy and require inotropic support should be considered for a mechanical support device as a bridge to transplant.

Key Recommendation # 9:

- In patients with HF_rEF, coronary revascularisation (by either CABG or PCI) should be considered in patients with HF and suitable coronary anatomy.

8.3 ASYMPTOMATIC LEFT VENTRICULAR DYSFUNCTION

The prevalence of Asymptomatic LV Systolic Dysfunction (ASLVSD) varies with the diagnostic LVEF criteria that is used as a cutoff as well as the population studied. About 0.9-2.1% in the general population have asymptomatic LVEF < 40%.^{336,337}

Patients with ASLVSD (LVEF < 40%) carry substantially higher risk for subsequent morbidity and mortality than the general population. The rate of progression to symptomatic HF was estimated to be 9.7% per year and the risk of death

or HF hospitalisation was 8%.^{9,338} Outcomes are worse if effective therapy is initiated after patients develop overt HF.³³⁹

Asymptomatic moderate to severe LV diastolic dysfunction is also common (5.6%) and associated with an adverse prognosis.³⁴⁰ There is a higher risk of progression to HF and death when asymptomatic diastolic dysfunction is present, particularly in patients with diabetes and CAD.³⁴⁰

Screening may be done by:³⁴¹

- **Resting ECG** - not very specific or sensitive
- **Echocardiography** - this is the most specific test
- **Natriuretic Peptides (NP) level** - may be used to identify individuals who may need an echocardiogram.

These screening tests are more cost effective and of greater value when used to screen high risk individuals.³⁴¹⁻³⁴³ These include patients with:

- CAD especially if there is a history of ACS
- Hypertension that has been long standing or poorly controlled
- Diabetes mellitus associated with complications
- Peripheral arterial or cerebrovascular disease
- Excessive alcohol intake
- Metabolic syndrome³⁴⁴
- Family history of cardiomyopathy

The goals of treatment in these patients are to:

- Slow down the progression of the disease
- Prevent the development of symptoms of HF
- Improve survival

Wherever possible, the underlying disease should be treated appropriately to prevent the development of HF.

Drug therapy. This includes:

I,A

- **ACE-I:** Long term treatment with an ACE-I has been shown to delay the onset of symptoms of HF and decrease the combined risk of death and hospitalisation.^{9,338,345,346}

IIa,C

- **ARB:** There has been no study of the use of ARB in patients with asymptomatic left ventricular dysfunction. The ARB, Valsartan, may be an alternative in post MI patients who cannot tolerate an ACE-I.²²⁰

I,A

- **β-blockers:** In post MI patients and in those with CAD, β-blockers are recommended. They may be considered in all patients with LVEF < 40%.^{157,347}

IIa,B

- **MRA:** In post MI patients with diabetes and reduced EF, eplerenone was beneficial.^{348,349} Eplerenone also reduced the risk of an increase in natriuretic levels post STEMI.³⁵⁰

III,C

- **Diuretics and digoxin:** There is no role for these agents in this group of asymptomatic patients.

III,B

- **Calcium channel blockers:** The use of calcium channel blockers with negative inotropic effects is not recommended in asymptomatic post MI patients with LVEF < 40%.³⁵¹

Key message 7:

- Identify patients who are at high risk of developing LV dysfunction and treat the underlying disease appropriately.
- ACE-I and β -blockers (post MI) have been shown to slow down the onset of symptoms and reduce cardiac morbidity.

8.4 HEART FAILURE WITH PRESERVED LEFT VENTRICULAR SYSTOLIC FUNCTION

The prevalence of HF with preserved LV systolic function (HFpEF) varies between 40-71% depending on the LVEF criteria used as cut off.^{18,352} HFpEF constitutes more than half of HF in older adults and the prevalence is increasing over time.^{18,352} Commonly, these patients are older women who have hypertension.

8.4.1 Diagnosis

The diagnosis of HFpEF is challenging as symptoms and signs can be attributable to other co-existing conditions and LVEF is normal. Other co-morbidities that can contribute to dyspnoea in these patients include chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and obesity.

Criteria that is used to diagnose HFpEF include:^{353,354}

- Clinical signs or symptoms of HF such as exertional dyspnoea, orthopnoea, atrial gallop sounds, and pulmonary rales combined with a suggestive chest X-ray and a favourable response to diuretics.
- Biochemistry - Elevated NP.
- Echocardiographic criteria;
 - Preserved or normal LVEF (> 50% or more within 72 hours of the event) and LV end diastolic volume index (LVEDVI) < 97ml/m².
 - Left ventricular hypertrophy (increased LV wall thickness or LV mass index > 115g/m² for men and > 95g/m² for women) or left atrial enlargement (LA volume index > 34ml/m²).
 - Diastolic dysfunction if E/e' \geq 13 and the mean e' septal and lateral wall < 9cm/s or tricuspid valve regurgitation velocity > 2.8m/s.

- Invasive haemodynamic criteria:
 - Pulmonary capillary wedge pressure > 15mmHg or LV end diastolic pressure of > 16mmHg indicates elevated LV filling pressures.

8.4.2 Aetiology and Associated Comorbidities

Diastolic dysfunction may be due to myocardial or pericardial disease. (See Table 14, Page 87).

Hypertension remains the most prevalent comorbidity of HFpEF, with a prevalence of 60% to 89% from large controlled trials, epidemiological studies, and HF registries.³⁵⁵

Other comorbidities include overweight or obesity, diabetes mellitus, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, obstructive sleep apnoea, anaemia, CAD and chronic kidney disease.^{18,352,356}

The presence of diabetes, a lower systolic BP, haemoglobin and eGFR were associated with a poorer outcome.³⁵⁶

AF is common in HFpEF and increases risk of adverse outcomes.³⁵⁷

8.4.3 Management

The management of these patients remains empiric, since trial data are limited. Compared with HFrEF patients, hospitalisations and deaths in patients with HFpEF are more likely to be non-cardiovascular.

The important aim of therapy is to alleviate symptoms, improve well-being and reduce hospitalisations. Screening for comorbidities and appropriate interventions of these comorbidities is important. It includes:

- Identifying and treating the underlying cause(s) appropriately.
 - Hypertension should be treated to target goals.^{55,358} Improved BP control has been shown to reduce hospitalisation for HF.³⁵⁸
 - CAD is common in patients with HFpEF and this should be treated appropriately.
- Tachyarrhythmias should be treated and sinus rhythm restored whenever possible. If the patient remains in persistent AF, β -blockers or calcium channel blockers (verapamil, diltiazem) alone or in combination are the usual first line agents used for rate control.
- Patients with paroxysmal or persistent AF should be anticoagulated to reduce the risk of thromboembolic events.^{359,360}

I,A

I,C

I,C

I,A

Pharmacological options include:

I,C

- **Diuretics:** These are necessary to control pulmonary congestion and peripheral oedema but should be used cautiously so as not to lower preload excessively and thereby reduce stroke volume and cardiac output.

IIa,C

- **β-blockers:** This could be given to lower heart rate and increase the diastolic filling period. At present, however, there is no good demonstration that β-blockers is beneficial in the treatment of HFpEF.^{226,361}

IIa,B

- **Non-dihydropyridine Calcium Channel Blockers (verapamil and diltiazem):** These may be used to lower the heart rate and has been shown to be beneficial.³⁶² Verapamil has been shown to improve functional capacity in patients with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy.³⁶³

IIa,B

- **ARB** trials have shown mixed results. One large trial showed a reduction in hospitalisation while another large trial was neutral.^{364,365}

IIa,B

- **ACE-I** may improve relaxation and cardiac distensibility directly and may have long term effects via their antihypertensive action and regression of hypertrophy and fibrosis. One small study showed an almost significant trend toward reduction in the primary end point of combined all-cause mortality and unexpected hospitalisations for HF while another trial was neutral.^{366,367}

IIa,B

- **MRA:** A large study with spironolactone showed no difference in the combined primary end point of cardiovascular death, aborted cardiac arrest, or HF hospitalisation, though there was a reduction in HF hospitalisation endpoint alone.³⁶⁸ Hyperkalaemia was more common in those on MRA and close monitoring of potassium and renal function is recommended for those treated with MRA.

I,B

- **Exercise training:** This is safe and improves exercise capacity and quality of life.¹⁶⁹ Combined endurance/resistance training appears safe for patients with HFpEF and improves exercise capacity (as reflected by an increase in peak oxygen consumption), physical functioning score and diastolic function.³⁶⁹ It should consist of dynamic isotonic and not static exercise (e.g. walking or cycling).

- The use of an implantable pulmonary artery pressure monitoring system can guide augmentation of diuretic therapy and reduce HF hospitalisations.³⁷⁰

Key Recommendation # 10:

- In managing patients with HFpEF:
 - Hypertension is an important cause and should be treated according to guidelines.
 - Treat volume overload with diuretics
 - Manage comorbidities.

Table 14: Causes of Diastolic Dysfunction

MYOCARDIAL DISORDERS	
Myocardial diseases	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Infiltrative ● Sarcoidosis ● Fatty infiltration
Non-infiltrative	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ischaemic cardiomyopathy ● Idiopathic cardiomyopathy ● Diabetic cardiomyopathy ● Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy
Endomyocardial diseases	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Endomyocardial fibrosis ● Hypereosinophilic syndrome
Storage disease	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Haemochromatosis ● Glycogen storage disease
PERICARDIAL DISORDERS	
Pericardial constriction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Constrictive pericarditis ● Effusive constrictive pericarditis
Pericardial effusions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Pericardial effusion with cardiac compression ● Glycogen storage disease

Adapted from van Kraaij DJ, van Pol PE, et al. Diagnosing diastolic heart failure. *Eur J Heart Failure* 2002;4:419-30.

8.5 SPECIAL GROUPS

8.5.1 DIABETES AND HEART FAILURE

Heart failure and diabetes often co-exist in as many as 35-45% of cases irrespective of whether it is HF_rEF or HF_pEF.³⁷¹ The presence of diabetes increases both morbidity and mortality in these HF patients.³⁷¹⁻³⁷⁴ This is particularly so in patients with HF_pEF who have co-existing microvascular complications.³⁷⁵

Patients with HF were shown to be at an increased risk of developing diabetes during a 3 year follow-up.^{376,377} The mechanisms for this are not clear and may be the result of drug therapy (diuretics), reduced physical activity or from increased catecholamine and sympathetic activity.

Conversely, men and women with diabetes have 2 x and 4 x respectively,

increased risk of HF as compared to those without diabetes.³⁷⁸ Associations have also been reported between absolute blood glucose levels, glycaemic control, and HF.^{41,43,368,379,380} The risk for hospitalisations for HF was increased by almost 45% over a 5.7 year period despite having five risk factor variables within the target range ie glycated haemoglobin level, low-density lipoprotein cholesterol level, blood pressure, absence of albuminuria and smoking.³⁸¹

HF is one of the earliest, most common and the most serious cardiovascular complication of diabetes.³⁸² Once HF develops, the clinical course is marked by frequent hospitalisations and eventually death.³⁸³⁻³⁸⁵ Most sudden deaths are due to LV dysfunction rather than a new ischaemic event. Advanced age, duration of the disease, insulin use, the presence of CAD and an elevated serum creatinine are all independent risk factors for the development of HF.³⁸⁶

Diabetes can lead to HF due to:

- Coronary atherosclerosis
- Co-existing hypertension
- Diabetic cardiomyopathy - this can present as either systolic or diastolic LV dysfunction in an otherwise healthy diabetic person in the absence of clinically significant coronary, valvular or hypertensive disease.³⁸⁷

The link between diabetes and HF has been postulated to be multifactorial. In these patients advanced glycation end products, formed by a non-enzymatic reaction between protein and sugar residues, are increased and correlate inversely with left ventricular ejection fraction, the severity of the disease and its prognosis.^{388,389} In addition, other proposed mechanisms include abnormal cardiac handling of free fatty acids, decreased myocardial levels of adiponectin, presence of cardiotoxic inflammatory cytokines and hyperinsulinaemia by itself.³⁹⁰

8.5.1.1 Diagnosis of HF in diabetes

Diabetics with HF present in a similar manner as non-diabetics. In diabetics though, dyspnoea may also be a symptom of ischaemia and CAD.

The investigative work up is also similar to non-diabetics.

8.5.1.2 Treatment of HF in patients with diabetes

Conventional therapies for HF/rEF are equally effective in both diabetics and non-diabetics. These include:

I,A

- Inhibitors of the renin angiotensin system – ACE-I/ARB.²¹⁴

- I,A ➤ β -blockers - diabetics with HF had a reduction in morbidity and mortality that was as great as, if not greater than non-diabetics.^{214,391}
 - I,A ➤ MRA - spironolactone and eplerenone. In the EPHESUS trial, eplerenone was shown to reduce mortality in patients with diabetes and mild HF, post MI¹⁶³
 - I,B ➤ Sacubitril/valsartan (ARNI)²²⁷
 - IIa,B ➤ Ivabradine^{234,235}
- In patients with HF_pEF,
- IIa,B ➤ Spironolactone was shown to reduce morbidity and mortality in obese diabetic patients.³⁶⁸
 - Sacubitril/valsartan and empagliflozin are being assessed in ongoing trials in HF patients with and without diabetes.

8.5.1.3 Treatment of diabetes in patients with HF

The optimal target HbA1c levels in these patients is still unknown. A large meta-analysis showed that intensive glucose lowering is not associated with any significant reduction in CV risk.³⁹² Conversely there was a 47% increase in the risk of HF.³⁹² Tight control of diabetes especially with the occurrence of hypoglycaemia is associated with increased mortality.³⁹²⁻³⁹⁵

In considering pharmacotherapy of diabetes in patients with HF:

- I,A ➤ The sodium-glucose cotransport-2 inhibitors (SGLT2i) have been shown to reduce the risk of HF and in addition, in patients with HF at baseline, it also reduces CV mortality and HF hospitalisations.⁹⁵⁻⁹⁸
- IIa, B ➤ Glucagon like Peptide -1 (GLP-1) agonists should be used with caution in patients with HF although recent large CV outcome trials have not demonstrated an increase in HF hospitalizations.^{396,397}
- III,B ➤ Saxagliptin, a dipeptidyl peptidase 4 inhibitors (DPP-4i), was shown to be associated with an increase in hospitalisation for HF.³⁹⁸
- This increased risk of HF was however, not seen with the other agents of the same class.³⁹⁹
- III,A ➤ Thiazolidinediones are associated with an increase in the incidence of HF and should be avoided in those in NYHA Functional class III & IV.^{400,401}
- IIa,C ➤ Sulphonylureas are generally safe in HF patients although caution must be exercised with the short acting formulations which may cause hypoglycaemia.
- IIa,C ➤ Biguanides like metformin and alpha-glucosidase inhibitors like acarbose are generally safe in patients with HF.

Key message 9:

- Persons with diabetes and, in general, managed in the same manner as persons without diabetes.
- When managing diabetes in patients with HF:
 - The sodium-glucose cotransport-2 inhibitors (SGLT2i) have been shown to reduce CV mortality and HF hospitalisations.
 - Saxagliptin and thiazolidinediones are best avoided because of a trend towards harm.
 - Sulphonylureas, biguanides like metformin and alpha-glucosidase inhibitors like acarbose are generally safe.

8.5.2 HEART FAILURE IN PREGNANCY

About 0.5-4% of pregnant women have cardiac disease.^{402,403} In our National Obstetrics Registry, CVD occurred in about 0.45 and 0.55% of cases in 2013 and 2014 respectively.¹⁹³

HF may develop in pregnancy:¹⁹³

- For the first time in a patient with pre-existing heart disease (congenital and/or valvular) due to decompensation from the stress.
- May occur in a patient who had HF previously and still has a depressed myocardial function. (LVEF < 40%).
- In a patient with a previously unrecognised genetic cardiomyopathy or a latent cardiac viral infection which has been unmasked or activated by the stress of pregnancy.⁴⁰⁴⁻⁴⁰⁷
- In a patient with a previously normal heart due to:⁴⁰⁸⁻⁴¹⁰
 - Hypertensive complications of pregnancy i.e. gestational hypertension and the more severe forms preeclampsia, the HELLP syndrome (H: haemolysis, EL: elevated liver enzymes, LP: low platelet count).
 - Peripartum cardiomyopathy.

Normal haemodynamic changes that occur in pregnancy are:

- Cardiac output increases by 30-50% during normal pregnancy.
- Cardiac output increases to 80% above baseline during labour and delivery.
- Haemodynamic changes return to baseline 2-4 weeks after vaginal delivery and up to 6 weeks after Caesarean delivery.

In women with heart disease, these changes may have a deleterious effect on their cardiovascular system and precipitate HF. The periods of greatest risk for cardiac events during pregnancy are early third trimester, at delivery and in the immediate post partum period.

8.5.2.1 Diagnosis

Most forms of cardiac disease can be detected by physical examination, ECG and echocardiography.

8.5.2.2. Management

The management of HF in pregnancy is more difficult than in the non-pregnant state and should be managed by a multidisciplinary team consisting of physicians, obstetricians and paediatricians.^{193,402,411}

In the management of HF in pregnancy, the following issues need to be considered:^{193,402}

- Gestational age at presentation.
- Clinical presentation, either as Acute HF or Chronic HF.
- Response to medical therapy.
- Potential maternal and foetal risks.
- Review and replace all fetotoxic drugs
- Timing and mode of delivery.

Predictors of maternal cardiac complications are as in Table 15, Page 91.

Table 15: Predictors of Maternal Risk for Cardiac Complication**Predictors of cardiac complication in the mother:**^{193,402,407,408}

- Cyanosis (oxygen saturation < 90%)
- Repaired or unrepaired cyanotic heart disease
- History of HF before pregnancy
- Prior cardiac event (HF, transient ischaemic attack, stroke, arrhythmia)
- Prior arrhythmia (symptomatic sustained tachyarrhythmia or bradyarrhythmia requiring treatment)
- NYHA class > II
- Valvular stenosis (aortic or mitral valve area < 1.5cm²) and LV outflow tract obstruction (peak gradient > 30mmHg)
- Reduced systemic ventricular dysfunction (LVEF < 40%)
- Mechanical valve
- High risk aortopathy
- Reduced subpulmonary ventricular function (TAPSE < 16 mm)
- Pulmonary arterial hypertension
- Systemic and pulmonary atrio-ventricular valve regurgitation (moderate to severe)
- Natriuretic peptide levels (NT-proBNP > 128pg/mL at 20 weeks predictive of event later in pregnancy)
- Cardiac medication before pregnancy
- Maternal history of smoking
- No prior cardiac intervention

A. Preconception counselling

I,C Patients with LVEF < 30% and those in NYHA Class III and IV should be strongly advised not to get pregnant.^{193,412} Preconception counselling should be for all women in the childbearing age with known or suspected heart disease. If pregnant, termination should be considered.

Management during pregnancy involves:

● Non-pharmacological measures

I,B The management of patients with mild symptoms consists mainly of non-pharmacological measures such as:¹⁹³

- limiting strenuous exercise.
- adequate rest - maintaining a low salt diet.
- treating anaemia and infections early.
- frequent antenatal examinations.

● Pharmacological measures

The following drugs may be used in the pregnant patient with HF:¹⁹³

I,C ➤ Diuretics are the first line therapy in patients who are fluid overloaded.

IIa,C ➤ Nitrates and/or hydralazine are used for preload and afterload reduction.

IIa,C ➤ β -blockers can be used cautiously.

IIa,C ➤ Digoxin is safe in pregnancy and during breast feeding.

III,C ➤ ACE-I, ARB and ARNI are contraindicated in pregnancy.

IIa,C ➤ ACE-I (enalapril and captopril) can be used in the post partum period.

III,C ➤ Ivabradine should not be used in pregnancy.

III,C ➤ Spironolactone is best avoided (FDA Category C) in pregnancy and during breast feeding.

● Other treatment considerations in the pregnant patient.

- Patients with AF who are haemodynamically unstable should be promptly electrically cardioverted. This is safe in pregnancy.
- Anticoagulation is indicated in the presence of AF, dilated left atrium or mechanical prosthetic heart valve.

I,C

- Patients with valvular lesions who remain symptomatic despite optimal medical treatment may be considered for percutaneous valve intervention or surgery.
- Commonly recommended antihypertensive drugs include methyldopa, labetalol, calcium channel blockers and hydralazine.⁴¹³⁻⁴¹⁷
- In patients with peripartum cardiomyopathy and severe AHF, bromocriptine may be considered.⁴⁰²

B. Antenatal care

The principles of management of HF in pregnancy are similar to that in the non-pregnant state. If the patient is in decompensated HF requiring inotropes, she should be transferred to a cardiac centre.⁴⁰²

C. Labour and delivery

Timing and mode of delivery should be carefully planned by the multidisciplinary team. In the majority of patients, vaginal delivery with epidural anaesthesia is the preferred mode of delivery.

- Caesarean section is indicated:¹⁹³
 - For obstetric reasons.
 - In patients on warfarin or who have discontinued their warfarin for < 2 weeks and who now are in imminent labour.
 - In patients with severe pulmonary hypertension.
- It is beneficial to shorten the second stage of labour by forceps or vacuum assisted delivery.¹⁹³
 - Left lateral decubitus position is preferred to attenuate the haemodynamic effects in the supine position.
 - A slow i.v infusion of oxytocin immediately after birth, (2 U of oxytocin given over 10 min followed by 12 mU/min for 4 h) reduces the risk of post partum haemorrhage and has a minimal impact on cardiovascular parameters.⁴¹⁸
- Routine antibiotic prophylaxis is not recommended in patients with valvular heart disease undergoing uncomplicated vaginal delivery or Caesarean section.

D. Post partum care

After delivery, careful monitoring of haemodynamic status should be done for at least 24 hours, or longer in high risk patients. In patients with severe cardiac lesions, haemodynamics may be abnormal up to 10 days after delivery.¹⁹³

These patients should be evaluated post partum to assess the need for corrective surgery.

The risk of recurrence of HF in subsequent pregnancies should also be made known to the patient.

Follow-up visit at 6 weeks post partum should be attended by the multidisciplinary team, a full cardiac assessment should be done, and appropriate contraception should be advised.

Key message 9:

The management of HF in pregnancy is more difficult than in the non-pregnant state and should be managed by a multidisciplinary team consisting of physicians, obstetricians and paediatricians.

- Patients with LVEF < 30% and those in NYHA Class III and IV should be strongly advised not to get pregnant. If pregnant, termination should be considered.
- HF that develops during pregnancy can be managed with the judicious use of diuretics, digoxin, nitrates, β -blockers and/or hydralazine.

8.5.3 HEART FAILURE IN ADULT CONGENITAL HEART DISEASE (ACHD)

Adult congenital heart disease (ACHD) includes patients who are born with congenital heart disease (CHD) and survived to adulthood (age 18 years and above). These include those:

- Diagnosed during childhood and did not require intervention.
- Diagnosed and treated during childhood either surgically or transcatheterly. A significant proportion of this group of patients have residual haemodynamic lesions predisposing them to develop complications later during adult life. Eg: most of the repaired cyanotic heart lesions, palliated single ventricle.
- Diagnosed in adulthood either incidentally or when presenting with complications. eg. atrial septal defects (ASD), congenitally corrected transposition of the great arteries (CCTGA) and Ebstein's anomaly of the tricuspid valve.

8.5.3.1 Prevalence

Advances in diagnosis, medical and surgical management, interventional techniques and perioperative care have resulted in an improvement in the survival of children with CHD into adult life. The population of ACHD is thus increasing rapidly.⁴¹⁹

The overall mortality rate of these patients is about 8% with the mean age of death occurring at 37 years.⁴²⁰ The main causes of death were sudden cardiac death, HF due to systemic ventricular failure or tachyarrhythmias or a combination of both.⁴²⁰⁻⁴²²

8.5.3.2 Pathophysiology of heart failure

The underlying pathophysiology of HF in ACHD is multifactorial and complex and is highly dependent on the underlying anatomy, haemodynamic severity, timing and type of intervention, myocardial protection during surgery, presence of residual haemodynamic lesions and acquired comorbidities. In general, HF in ACHD may be due to:⁴²³

- Hemodynamic significant lesions- these need surgical/catheter interventions
- Myocardial failure - the mainstay of management is drug therapy and correction of the underlying causes eg CAD.
- Arrhythmias - management is a combination of drug therapy, CRT and or ICD
- Undetermined or a combination of factors

8.5.3.3 Diagnosis

It is important to determine the cause of the HF. It may be due to:

- An undiagnosed cardiac defect.
- A worsening residual lesion.
- Arrhythmias.
- A compounding extra cardiac pathology such as thyroid dysfunction or severe anaemia.

Knowing the baseline cardiac lesion and the history of previous surgeries and/or catheter interventions is absolutely important in the management of these patients. Due to chronic adaptation to abnormal haemodynamic state since childhood, many ACHD patients with HF may not report any symptoms or reduced exercise tolerance. Traditional echocardiographic parameters to assess ventricular function (volume, ejection fraction) are not applicable in many situations such as systemic RV or single ventricle. Longitudinal monitoring of individual patients is of paramount importance.

Investigations are similar to those mentioned in Section 6, Page 39.

- ECG - baseline abnormalities are common and a change in ECG morphology should trigger further investigation. New tachyarrhythmia is a common triggering factor for HF in ACHD patients
- Chest Xray - cardiomegaly, pulmonary congestion, pleural effusion, size of pulmonary arteries, concomitant lung pathology

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

Table 16: Common etiology and treatment of heart failure in ACHD

Etiology	Common examples	Treatment
Systemic left ventricular failure	Structural	Surgical or catheter intervention whenever
	Volume loading lesions e.g. aortic regurgitation, mitral regurgitation and VSD Pressure loading lesions e.g. subvalvular, valvular and supra-ventricular aortic stenosis and coarctation of aorta	
	Myocardial disease, cardiomyopathy from any	Standard heart failure therapy (refer to Table 3, Page 32; Flow Chart III, Page 31)
Systemic right ventricular failure	ccTGA, DTGA post Mustard or Senning atrial switch procedure	Consider tricuspid valve repair CRT Standard heart failure therapy (refer to Table 3, Page 32; Flow Chart III, Page 31)
Systolic dysfunction of the subpulmonic RV	Structural	Consider surgical correction e.g. Repair or replace the dysfunction valve, relief of RV outflow tract obstruction, ASD (if still operable) Symptomatic treatment for HF
	RV volume overload: (i) chronic pulmonary insufficiency after TOF repair (ii) Ebstein's anomaly of tricuspid valve with TR (iii) Shunt e.g. ASD, TAPVD	
	Chronic RV pressure overload e.g. pulmonary stenosis, conduit stenosis), DORV post TOF with residual RVOTO, Branch PA stenosis	
	Myocardial dysfunction e.g. ischemia, cardiomyopathies due to any etiology	
	PAH/Eisenmengers syndrome	HF therapy: diuretics, MRA and ACE PAH targeted therapy ⁴²⁴ Standard heart failure therapy (refer to Table 3, Page 32; Flow Chart III, Page 31)
Fontan failure	Functioning single ventricular hearts e.g. DILV, Tricuspid atresia, unbalance AVSD	Surgical or catheter intervention of residual structural lesion Fontan failure Standard heart failure therapy (refer to Table 3, Page 32; Flow Chart III, Page 31)
Arrhythmia	Atrial flutter/fibrillation Ventricular arrhythmias Common lesions: ASD, Ebstein's, Fontan, Post TOF correction	Standard antiarrhythmic therapy RFA CRT Pacemaker, ICD implantation
Acquired ischemic heart disease	(i) Cardiovascular risk factors	Treatment of risk factors CABG or PCI
	(ii) Congenital coronary artery abnormalities or acquired (extrinsic compression, coronary artery kinking)	
	iii) Anaemia	Look for underlying cause and treatment
	iv) Thyroid disease	

*Diuretics should be used with caution

- Echocardiography - establish underlying anatomical diagnosis, identify residual or new lesions and sequelae, assess ventricular function
- Cardiac MRI - the new “gold standard” for comprehensive assessment of anatomy, haemodynamic, ventricular function and detection of myocardial fibrosis
- Cardiac CT - assessment of stents, conduit, coronary artery and collateral arteries
- Cardiac catheterisation - invasive quantification of shunts, measurements of pressure gradients across stenotic lesions, assessment of severity of pulmonary hypertension and vasoreactivity to help determine surgical operability. Lesions which are amenable to transcatheter interventions can be treated at the same time.
- Natriuretic peptides - the level correlates with the severity of haemodynamic lesions in many ACHD
- Cardiopulmonary exercise test - valuable tool with prognostic implications

8.5.3.4. Management

The aim of management is to:

- Reduce morbidity and mortality.
- Improve quality of life and functional capacity.
- Reduce hospitalisations.

All patients with ACHD and HF are best managed at a tertiary cardiac centre by a multidisciplinary team with ACHD expertise.⁴²⁵

Management includes:

- Surgical or catheter-based interventions is indicated where amenable.⁴²⁶
- Pharmacological therapy is less well studied in CHD. Selection of choice of pharmacological agents should be based on understanding of the underlying pathophysiology of HF. (Table 16, Page 96).^{423,427-429}
 - Systolic failure of systemic LV - diuretics, ACE-Is, ARB, β -blockers and mineralocorticoid receptor antagonists should be used in both symptomatic and asymptomatic patients.
 - Systolic failure systemic RV - evidence is lacking but the above standard HF agents may be used in symptomatic patients.
 - Systolic failure of subpulmonic RV - diuretics are the mainstay treatment for symptomatic patients. If RV failure is secondary to pulmonary arterial hypertension (eg. Eisenmenger syndrome), PAH-targeted therapy such as phosphodiesterase-5 inhibitors (PDE5i), endothelin receptor antagonists or prostacycline analog should be used (see Malaysian CPG on Management of Pulmonary Arterial Hypertension, 2011)

- Systolic failure of single ventricle - treatment is challenging and options are limited. Diuretics may be used to reduce congestive symptoms but high doses may reduce preload and effective cardiac output. In patients with raised pulmonary vascular resistance, PDE5i may improve Fontan haemodynamics.
- Tachyarrhythmia is a frequent precipitating factor of HF in ACHD and should be treated aggressively with either pharmacological therapy, catheter ablation or with devices such as cardiac implantable electronic devices (CIEDs).^{430,431}
- Thromboembolism using anticoagulants (warfarin or Direct Oral Anticoagulants - DOAC).
- Iron deficiency is not uncommon in ACHD patients, especially in patients with cyanotic lesions. Iron replacement improves functional capacity and reduces number of HF hospitalisations.
- Routine phlebotomy is no longer recommended for cyanotic patients with secondary erythrocytosis as it increases the risk of stroke and mortality. It is only indicated in symptomatic hyperviscosity syndromes.
- Individualised exercise rehabilitation.⁴³²
- Antibiotic prophylaxis against infective endocarditis (See Malaysian CPG for Prevention, Diagnosis and Management of Infective Endocarditis, 1st Edition 2017).
- Contraception and pregnancy (See Malaysian CPG on Heart Disease in Pregnancy, 2nd Edition 2016 and Sections 8.2.1.6, Page 64 and 8.5.2, Page 90)

8.5.4 ARRHYTHMIA-INDUCED HEART FAILURE

Arrhythmia-induced HF (also known as Tachycardia-induced cardiomyopathy) is a reversible cause of HF characterised by LV dysfunction resulting from an increased ventricular rate. The degree of dysfunction correlates with the duration as well as rate of the tachyarrhythmia.

Recognition of this entity is important clinically, as treatment of the underlying arrhythmia can result in either partial or complete recovery of LV function which, in turn, would result in an improvement in morbidity and mortality.^{433,434}

Arrhythmia suppression should be considered as part of the holistic evaluation in treating patients with HF although the underlying mechanisms are not fully understood.

8.5.4.1 Supraventricular Arrhythmias

Any supraventricular tachycardia (SVT) with a rapid ventricular response may induce HF. Commonly encountered SVTs in clinical practice include:⁴³⁵

- Incessant atrial tachycardia (AT),
- Very frequent episodes of atrioventricular nodal re-entrant tachycardia (AVNRT), and
- Atrioventricular re-entrant tachycardia (AVRT).

Successful treatment, usually via electrophysiological study and radiofrequency ablation, could potentially restore LV function.

8.5.4.2 Atrial Fibrillation

AF is the commonest cardiac arrhythmia encountered in clinical practice.⁴³⁶ AF with a rapid ventricular response may induce HF.^{436,437}

Rate control or rhythm control with antiarrhythmic drug is the first line therapy. See Section 8.2.2-J1, Pages 75 and 76.

8.5.4.3 Ventricular Arrhythmias

Ventricular arrhythmias, including frequent premature ventricular complexes (PVC) or VT, may also induce HF. Maintenance of sinus rhythm or control of ventricular rate is critical in treating patients with HF.⁴³⁴

Curative or suppressive therapies with either radiofrequency ablation or antiarrhythmic drugs (AAD) may be considered in patients with PVC burden:

IIb,C

- 10% over 24 hours (high)

IIb,B

- 20% over 24 hours⁴³⁸ (very high)

Radiofrequency ablation is preferred, since most antiarrhythmic drugs are contraindicated in the presence of HF.

8.5.4.4 Ventricular Pacing

Ventricular pacing at high rates may cause HF. Additionally, right ventricular pacing (more evidently at the apical position) may exacerbate HF symptoms, increase hospitalisation for HF and increase mortality.^{439,440}

In patients with HF who have bradyarrhythmias and where pacing is indicated, biventricular pacing (CRT) is the pacing mode of choice.⁴⁴¹

Key message 9:

- Arrhythmia-induced heart failure (also known as tachycardia-induced cardiomyopathy) is a reversible cause of HF.
- Successful treatment of the arrhythmia by drug therapy or catheter ablation can result in normalisation of LV function.

8.5.5 CARDIO-ONCOLOGY AND HEART FAILURE

Heart disease and cancer are often linked due to:

- Common risk factors (e.g. increasing age and cigarette smoking)
- Treatment strategies
 - Chemotherapy drugs has been associated with HF, arrhythmias, vasculitis and thromboembolic disease.
 - Radiotherapy of the mediastinum and left chest can lead to CAD, myopericardial fibrosis and valvular dysfunction.

Dyspnoea in cancer patients could be due to:

- Fluid overload.
- Cardiomyopathy due to chemotherapeutic agents, stress (Takotsubo), or underlying CAD.
- The primary cancer causing anaemia, lung and pericardial involvement.

Chemotherapy-induced cardiomyopathy is not common, clinical HF occurs in 1-5% and an asymptomatic decrease in LV function in the range of 5% to 20%.⁴⁴² Prognosis in the patients who develop HF is poor.⁴⁴³

The anthracycline class of chemotherapeutic agents remain the major cause of chemotherapy-induced cardiomyopathy.^{444,445} In the current era, newer agents have also been implicated in a reversible form of cardiomyopathy.⁴⁴⁶

Chemotherapy-induced cardiomyopathy as defined by the Cardiac Review and Evaluation Committee is the presence of at least one or more of the following.⁴⁴⁷

1. Cardiomyopathy characterised by a decrease in Ejection Fraction (EF) globally or due to regional changes in interventricular septum contraction.
2. Symptoms of HF.
3. Signs associated with HF including but not limited to S3 gallop, tachycardia, or both.
4. Decline in initial EF of at least 5% to < 55% with signs and symptoms of HF or asymptomatic decrease in EF of at least 10% to < 55%.

Chemotherapy drugs that have been associated with HF include (Appendix V, Page120):

- Doxorubicin
 - 5% at a cumulative dose of 400mg/m² (the higher the cumulative dose, the greater the risk of HF.⁴⁴⁵
 - Even at lower doses of 180 to 240mg/m², subclinical events can occur in up to 30% of patients about 13 years post treatment.⁴⁴⁸
 - These suggest that there is no 'safe' dose for doxorubicin.
- Cyclophosphamide especially in high doses and ifosfomide.^{449,450}
- Newer agents such as monoclonal antibodies (trastuzumab and pertuzumab), small molecule tyrosine kinase inhibitor (imatinib, sunitinib, sorafenib) and the proteasome inhibitor (bortezomib).
 - Trastuzumab especially when administered together with anthracyclines and cyclophosphamide, has been associated with an increased incidence of HF of 27% compared to 1.7% to 4.1% when anthracycline was not part of the therapeutic regimen.⁴⁵¹⁻⁴⁵³ Symptoms are usually mild to moderate and improve following medical management and termination of drug administration. Improvement is usually seen in about 4-6 weeks after withdrawal of the agent.⁴⁵⁴⁻⁴⁵⁶ After symptomatic improvement, reinstitution of treatment is usually possible.⁴⁵⁴⁻⁴⁵⁶
 - Vascular endothelial growth factor signaling pathway (VSP) inhibitors (bevacizumab) can cause hypertension. Bevacizumab also blocks receptors that are involved in the compensatory response to stress in the cardiomyocytes and when the heart is unable to compensate for the hypertension, it could lead to HF.^{457,458} Maintaining good blood pressure control can prevent HF associated with this agent. Heart failure due to VSP inhibitors is usually reversible with cessation of the agent.⁴⁵⁹

One must consider both the efficacy and the toxicity in choosing chemotherapeutic agents. Many of the newer targeted agents cause a reversible form of HF and symptoms usually resolve after the initiation of anti-failure medications.^{454-456,459,460}

Risk factors for anthracycline toxicity include: ⁴⁶¹⁻⁴⁶⁵

- The total cumulative dose
- Intravenous bolus administration versus infusion
- Higher single doses
- History of prior irradiation
- Use of concomitant agents known to have cardiotoxicity
- Female gender
- Underlying CV disease
- Age (young and elderly)

An increase in cardiac biomarkers such as troponins during and after administration is an indication of toxicity.

8.5.5.1 Management

- Patients undergoing chemotherapy should have a careful clinical evaluation and assessment and treatment of CV risk factors.^{464,465}
- Blood pressure control is important in all patients especially in those being considered for VSP inhibitors.
- All patients with potential cardiotoxic chemotherapy should have an echocardiogram prior to treatment. An important parameter is the LVEF determined using the biplane method of discs (Simpson's method) or three-dimensional echocardiography where available. Newer techniques to detect and quantitate regional and global myocardial dysfunction (strain assessment with global longitudinal strain) can be used to detect pre-clinical and subtle changes in function.⁴⁶⁶⁻⁴⁶⁹
- Biomarkers such as troponin and natriuretic peptides can help identify patients at higher risk.^{462,463,470,471}

Close collaboration between the oncologist and the cardiologist is important.

For the oncologists, the strategy (prior to commencement) includes:⁴⁶⁵

I,C

- Identifying high risk patients (pre-existing heart disease, presence of CV risk factors, age - young and old, female gender, use of high dose anthracycline regimens).

I,C

- High risk patients should:
 - Have a pre-treatment cardiac function evaluation. If the LVEF is < 50%, refer to the cardiologist.
 - Be considered for non-cardiotoxic alternatives.
 - Have their therapy protocols adjusted where necessary (e.g. reduction in doses, continuous infusions rather than bolus injections, liposomal doxorubicin, dexrazoxane etc).

For the cardiologists/general physicians, the strategy includes:

I,C

- Treating CV risk factors.

I,C

- Assessing, repeating (if necessary) imaging studies. (e.g. using high quality LVEF measurement, strain evaluation etc).

I,C

- Assessing cardiac biomarkers (troponin and/or NP).

IIa,B

- Considering cardio-protection prior to/or during treatment using β -blockers, MRA and/or ACE-I/ARB if:^{69,465,472-474}
 - EF < 50%,
 - EF drops by > 10%
 - Abnormal global longitudinal strain (GLS) (> 15% drop).

- Monitoring LVEF during therapy is important with repeat echocardiography at 3-monthly intervals and/or according to symptoms. If cardioprotective medications are given, monitoring may be necessary at closer intervals of time depending on the clinical condition of the patient e.g. 1-monthly interval.
- Withholding cardiotoxic therapy only as a last resort. (for anthracycline LVEF < 45%, for anti-HER2 therapy LVEF < 40%).
- Monitoring even after completion of therapy:
 - Obtain post therapy LVEF.
 - Repeat echocardiography in 6 months or 1 year. Most cases of treatment-associated cardiac dysfunction develop within the first year after completion of therapy.^{475,476}
 - If EF remains abnormal, follow guidelines for management of HF.⁴⁶⁵

Key message 9:

- Chemotherapy-induced cardiomyopathy is not common; clinical HF occurs in 1-5%.
- Close collaboration between the oncologist and the cardiologist is important.
- Patients undergoing chemotherapy should have a careful clinical evaluation, assessment and treatment of CV risk factors.

8.5.6 HEART FAILURE AND KIDNEY DYSFUNCTION

8.5.6.1 Epidemiology, definitions and classifications

Cardiac and pre-existing kidney disease at admission frequently co-exist, varying from 45.4% in patients with chronic HF to > 60% in those with AHF.^{477,478}

In addition, during treatment of AHF, a significant proportion of patients will develop varying degrees of worsening renal function (WRF).

The definition of WRF is:⁴⁷⁹

- An increase in serum creatinine by $\geq 26.5\mu\text{mol/L}$ (0.3mg/dl) **and/or**
- A $\geq 25\%$ increase in serum creatinine or a $\geq 20\%$ drop in eGFR.

The rise in serum creatinine usually occurs in the first three to five days of hospitalisation.

The incidence of WRF is estimated to be between 19 and 45%.¹⁶⁵ This large observed range is due to variations in the definitions of WRF, the observed time-at-risk and the study population.¹⁶⁵

Risk factors for WRF during admission for HF include:⁴⁸⁰

- A prior history of HF or diabetes,
- An admission serum creatinine of > 133 μ mol/L, **or**
- Systolic blood pressure > 160mmHg.

WRF may fulfill criteria for type 1 or type 2 cardiorenal syndrome (CRS). The term “cardiorenal syndrome” refers to disorders of the heart and kidneys whereby acute or chronic dysfunction in one organ may induce acute or chronic dysfunction of the other.¹⁶⁵

This syndrome has been classified by the Acute Dialysis Quality Initiative working group into 5 subtypes as shown in Table 17, Page 105.¹⁶⁵ Many patients however, may belong to more than one subtype and may move between subtypes during the course of their disease.¹⁶⁵

8.5.6.2. Pathogenesis of CRS

Multiple mechanisms are involved in the pathogenesis of CRS. These include:

- Increased renal venous pressure - venous congestion is probably the most important factor.⁴⁸¹
- RV dysfunction.
- Reduced renal perfusion with reduced cardiac output.
- Neurohumoral adaptations (e.g. activation of the sympathetic nervous system and the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system, increases in vasopressin and endothelin-1).

8.5.6.3 Clinical significance /Impact of kidney dysfunction in HF

The combination of cardiac and kidney disease increases the complexity and costs of care, and may interact to worsen prognosis.

A. Pharmacologic considerations

- Safety:
 - Dosing of renally-excreted cardiac drugs need adjustment in the presence of renal impairment (e.g. digoxin, insulin, low molecular weight heparin).
 - Patients with HF are at increased risk of contrast-induced acute kidney injury.

- Efficacy:
 - Impaired renal function will affect drug choices and dosing. If eGFR < 30mls/min/1.73m², most thiazide diuretics are no longer effective and loop diuretics are preferred. Higher doses of loop diuretics may be required with increasing renal impairment.

B. Prognostic implications

- Preexisting CKD is a bad prognostic indicator in patients with HF - the more severe the CKD, the worse the mortality.^{482,483}
- In patients with HF, WRF may not always indicate a poor outcome.⁴⁸⁴ The prognostic value of WRF is mainly determined by:
 - The presence of persistent congestion
 - Baseline renal function and magnitude of renal changes
 - Duration - persistent WRF is usually associated with hemodynamic derangements and poor prognosis as compared with transient WRF as a result of aggressive decongestive therapy.⁴⁸⁵⁻⁴⁸⁷

Table 17: Classification of Cardiorenal Syndrome (CRS)

Cardiorenal (CRS) Subtypes	Description
CRS Type 1 (acute CRS)	Rapid worsening of cardiac function leading to acute kidney injury e.g. MI with cardiogenic shock.
CRS Type 2 (chronic CRS)	Chronic abnormalities in cardiac function leading to progressive Chronic Kidney Disease (CKD) e.g. chronic HF _r EF or HF _p EF.
CRS Type 3 (acute renocardiac syndrome)	Worsening of renal function leading to acute cardiac dysfunction e.g. in Acute Kidney Injury.
CRS Type 4 (chronic renocardiac syndrome)	Primary chronic kidney disease contributing to decreased cardiac function and an increased risk of CV events e.g. CKD leading to LVH, CAD.
CRS Type 5 (secondary CRS)	Presence of comorbid cardiac and renal dysfunction due to either acute or chronic systemic disease e.g. diabetes, sepsis, amyloidosis.

Adapted from Ronco C, McCullough P, Anker SD, et al. Cardio-renal syndromes: report from the consensus conference of the Acute Dialysis Quality Initiative. *Eur Heart J* 2010;31:703–11.

8.5.6.4. Management

- I,C ● A multi-disciplinary approach is recommended. Early referral to a nephrologist is advisable.
- I,C ● Exclude potentially reversible causes for increasing renal dysfunction such as hyper - or hypovolaemia, concomitant medications such as aminoglycosides and NSAIDs, ACE-I or ARB and renal artery stenosis.
- I,C ● Closely monitor electrolytes and kidney function, especially during acute illnesses, dehydration and when increasing doses of cardiac drugs including diuretics. The baseline renal function will determine how frequently this should be done.
 - The recommended range for serum potassium is 4-5.5mmol/L.⁴⁸⁸
 - Wherever possible, avoid nephrotoxins, e.g. contrast media for angiography
 - Intravenous diuretics
 - Loop diuretics are the first choice.
- I,B ➢ Continuous infusion may not have greater benefits compared with bolus dosing.^{115-118,489}
- Ia,B ➢ Start initially with 2-2.5 times the usual oral dose.
- Ia,B ➢ Combination therapy (loop diuretic and thiazide/thiazide-like diuretic/mineralocorticoid) may be required to enhance diuresis.²⁰⁵⁻²⁰⁷ However, care is required to avoid electrolyte disturbances, hypovolaemia and worsening renal dysfunction.
- Careful use of Renin Angiotensin System (RAS) blockers
 - I,A ➢ HF patients with stable, chronic mild-moderate renal insufficiency (eGFR > 30mls/min/1.73m²) should receive standard therapy with an ACE-I/ ARB and an MRA.⁴⁹⁰
 - A serum creatinine rise or GFR decrease by up to 30% from baseline may be acceptable before it becomes necessary to consider stopping or decreasing doses.²²¹
 - I,C ➢ In patients with advanced renal failure, the decision to start or stop RAS blockers should be individualised.⁴⁹⁰
 - I,C ➢ Consider withholding RAS blockers during aggressive diuresis in patients at high risk for WRF.
 - RAS blockers (and β -blockers) can be used in patients with HF who are on chronic dialysis therapy.
- Ultrafiltration
 - Ia,B ➢ This involves the removal of plasma water across a semi-permeable membrane in response to a transmembrane pressure gradient.
 - It may be considered for congestive symptoms refractory to diuresis, but should be used in consultation with a nephrologist.⁴⁹¹
 - Evidence for its efficacy in fluid removal is mixed at present.⁴⁹¹

- Haemodialysis
 - Criteria for possible need to initiate renal replacement therapy include:
 - ◆ Oliguria unresponsive to fluid resuscitation.
 - ◆ Severe hyperkalaemia (serum potassium > 6.5mmol/L).
 - ◆ Severe acidaemia (pH < 7.2).
 - ◆ Serum urea > 25mmol/L.
 - ◆ Serum creatinine > 300µmol/L.

Key message 9:

- Cardiac and kidney disease frequently co-exist and this increases the complexity and costs of care, and may interact to worsen prognosis.
- Management includes the use of intravenous diuretics, careful use of Renin Angiotensin System blockers, β -blockers and occasionally ultrafiltration and haemodialysis.

8.6 ADVANCED HEART FAILURE/REFRACTORY HEART FAILURE

These are patients with severe symptoms of HF despite maximal medical therapy. Hospital admission is necessary for stabilisation. Meticulous control of fluid balance is important. Aggravating causes of HF as listed in Table 5, Page 39 should be identified and treated.

These patients may need specialised treatment in CCU or ICU. The following may be required:

- Intravenous infusion of frusemide. These patients may require combination loop diuretics and thiazides.
- Intravenous infusion of inotropes - low dose dobutamine (5mcg/kg/min) or milrinone. These improve symptoms but no survival benefit has been demonstrated.^{126,492}
- Ultrafiltration in patients who are fluid overloaded.⁴⁹³ In most patients, however, the relief is temporary.

The prognosis of these patients is poor. They should be referred to assess whether they may be potential candidates for mechanical circulatory support (e.g. LVAD) and consideration for heart transplant.

8.6.1 HEART TRANSPLANT

Heart transplantation is a well-established treatment of refractory end stage HF. This definitive therapy for HF however is limited by the lack of donor organs.^{494,495}

All patients with severe symptomatic HF despite optimal medical therapy and no other alternative therapy option should be considered for heart transplant. They need to be referred to a HF specialist cardiac hospital for further evaluation.

Assessment for heart transplant is done by a multispeciality, multidisciplinary team and appropriate work up will be performed for eligibility.

Eligibility criteria to be considered for heart transplant include:

- Poor LVEF (< 25%).
- Recurrent HF hospitalisations.
- Major limitation of the patient's daily activities.
- Poor effort tolerance i.e. peak VO₂ (maximal oxygen consumption or peak oxygen uptake) less than 10ml/kg/min (or < 50% predicted). VO₂ max is the maximum rate of oxygen consumption measured during incremental exercise ie exercise of increasing intensity and is widely used as an indicator of cardiorespiratory fitness.
- Intravenous inotropic dependence for symptomatic relief or to maintain end organ function.
- Motivated, psychologically stable and compliant to therapy.

Contraindications to heart transplant

- Active infection.
- Severe peripheral arterial or cerebrovascular disease.
- Malignancy within 5 years.
- Diabetes mellitus with widespread microvascular complications.
- Systemic disease with multi-organ dysfunction.
- Irreversible chronic kidney, liver or lung disease.
- Pharmacologically irreversible pulmonary hypertension.
- Other medical or psychosocial issues that would impact survival.

8.6.2 MECHANICAL CIRCULATORY SUPPORT

The use of mechanical circulatory support (e.g. LVAD), should be considered for patients with potentially reversible or treatable conditions or as a bridge to heart transplant in suitable candidates.

LVAD may also be used as destination therapy in candidates who are not suitable for transplant. Patients have improvement in their symptoms when compared to optimal medical therapy.^{496,497} However, the rate of rehospitalisations due to complications of bleeding, thrombosis and infections are high.⁴⁹⁶⁻⁴⁹⁸ Many patients also go into major depression. Thus, extensive discussion with the patient and family is necessary prior to LVAD implantation.

Key message 10:

- Patients with Advanced Heart Failure should be referred to assess whether they may be potential candidates for mechanical circulatory support (e.g. LVAD) and consideration for heart transplant.

8.7 PALLIATIVE AND END OF LIFE CARE

Despite recent advances in therapy, for some patients, HF remains a progressive disease and carries a poor prognosis. Patients with refractory symptoms despite guideline-directed medical therapy, should be considered for palliative and end of life care if they have the following characteristics:⁴⁹⁹

- Progressive functional decline (mental and physical) and dependence in most activities of daily living.
- Severe HF symptoms with poor quality of life despite optimal pharmacological and non-pharmacological therapies.
- Frequent hospital admissions or serious episodes of decompensation despite optimal therapies.
- Heart transplantation and mechanical circulatory support ruled out.
- Cardiac cachexia.
- Clinically judged to be near end of life.

The aim of palliative care in HF is to prevent and relieve suffering and to promote the best quality of life for patients and their families.⁵⁰⁰

Despite the complexities of end-of-life issues in HF patients, there is minimal evidence-based guidance on the care of this population.⁵⁰¹ The key components of end-of-life care are:

1. Advanced care plan with directives and informed decisions on:
 - Use or withdrawal of treatment including advanced therapies such as V inotropes, ICD and mechanical circulatory support.
 - When it would be appropriate to switch off devices such as ICD or CRT.
 - Resuscitation status.
 - Preferred location of death (i.e. at home or hospital).
2. Symptom management

Goals of care at this stage should shift from extending life to controlling symptoms and maximising quality of life. Common symptoms include:

 - Dyspnoea
 - Fatigue
 - Pain
 - Urinary retention

- Constipation
- Cachexia
- Depression

Medications that may be useful include analgesics, antiemetics, anxiolytics, opioids, laxatives, and diuretics, etc.

3. Psychosocial support

The impact of HF on quality of life for the patient and family is complex and extends beyond physical symptoms.⁵⁰²

Emotional, spiritual and social support should be provided to alleviate patient anxiety about dying, and to guide patient towards a peaceful journey at the end of life.

9. ORGANISATION OF CARE

9.1 LEVEL OF CARE AND SHARED MANAGEMENT

The care of patients with HF should ideally take place in a multidisciplinary system, allowing for shared care between the hospital (secondary or tertiary settings) and community (primary setting). A multidisciplinary approach encompasses patient education, cardiac rehabilitation, psychosocial support and palliative care, and has been proven to reduce HF hospitalisations and mortality in discharged patients.⁵⁰³⁻⁵⁰⁵ The multidisciplinary team usually consists of cardiologists and or general physicians, HF nurses, pharmacists, dieticians, physiotherapists, primary care providers, social workers as well as geriatricians, psychologists, occupational therapists and when necessary, palliative care specialists. Care can be done in two different settings:

- In the patient's own home - home-based interventions are associated with significantly lower healthcare costs, reduced hospital readmissions and an improvement in the patient's quality of life.⁵⁰⁶ This may however, not be feasible in our local setting.
- Specialist outpatient clinic - the Heart Failure Clinic (HFC).

HFCs can either be:

- Nurse-directed - these are run by nurses with special training in HF.
- Physician-directed - run by general physicians and/or cardiologists.

HFCs can be established in the tertiary hospitals or in the primary care setting. The minimum human resource requirements are a:

- Cardiologist or general physician with an interest in cardiology and HF,
- Dedicated nurse and
- Medical technologist for blood taking, doing echocardiography and 6 minutes walk tests.

In bigger clinic settings, the involvement of physiotherapists to encourage physical activity, pharmacists and counsellors for end of life care would be advisable.

These clinics will be the intermediary between in-patient hospital care and community primary care. Patients who can be seen in these clinics include those:⁵⁰⁷

- Recently discharged after an admission for decompensated HF (a waiting time of 7-12 days post discharge has to be the maximum wait-time).
- Who are in the early decompensation phase and need treatment modification.
- Who are stable but need uptitration of HF medications.
- With ICD or CRTs.
- With comorbidities, such as renal dysfunction, diabetes and COPD.
- With advanced HF who may benefit from:
 - Heart transplant
 - Left Ventricular Assist Device (LVAD)
 - Palliative care.

The objectives of these HF clinics may vary based on local settings. These include:^{507,508}

- Optimisation of medical therapy particularly the uptitration of β -blockers, ACE-I and MRA.
- Education of the patient and caregiver on the nature of the disease and its progression.
- Promotion of self-care such as :
 - Compliance to medical therapy and fluid restriction.
 - Regular weighing and adjusting diuretic doses according to symptoms and body weight.

Patient with optimised HF medications/treatment plans can be discharged to the community with appropriate care plans to primary care. Close partnership between these HF clinics and primary care helps to reduce unnecessary admissions to hospital.

In 2018, the Heart Failure Medication Therapy Adherence Clinic (MTAC) was introduced. These clinics are conducted by pharmacists in collaboration with doctors and other healthcare providers to improve HF management. The objectives of the Heart Failure MTAC are:⁵⁰⁹

- Enhance patient's adherence to HF pharmacotherapy and non-pharmacological interventions.
- To reduce unscheduled emergency department visits or hospitalisations of HF patient due to acute decompensation.
- To provide consultative service to doctors on evidence-based HF pharmacotherapy and related issues.
- To collaborate with doctors and other health care professionals in HF management program.

9.2 MONITORING AND FOLLOW-UP

Patients with HF require regular follow-up and monitoring. Serial evaluations serve to assess a patient's status, response to therapy, development of complications and disease progression. Key components of assessment include:

- Functional capacity - NYHA functional class or 6-minute walk test
- Fluid status and body weight
- Blood pressure, heart rate and rhythm
- Examination of the cardiovascular and respiratory systems
- Cognitive status and nutritional status
- Review of pharmacotherapy - uptitration, compliance and side effects
- Serum urea, electrolytes, creatinine and eGFR as necessary
- Diet and sodium intake
- Consumption of alcohol or illicit drugs
- Smoking history.

The frequency of follow-up will depend on the patient's clinical stability and need for pharmacotherapy optimisation. A patient with a recent episode of decompensation or clinical instability, for instance, should ideally be seen again soon, usually within 2 weeks. Ultimately, the intensity and type of follow-up would be determined by the local organisation of care and resources.

Routine serial echocardiogram is not recommended. However, if there has been a recent change in clinical status or if the patient has received treatment that might significantly change certain echocardiographic parameters, a follow-up echocardiogram is reasonable to assess the LVEF and structural remodeling.

Serial brain natriuretic peptide measurements to guide and tailor HF therapy cannot be broadly recommended at the present time due to a lack of consistent evidence.²⁹⁻³²

9.3 CARDIOLOGY REFERRAL

HF patients with stable symptoms may be managed at the primary care level. Referral to the cardiologist should be considered in the following situations:

- De novo HF for a comprehensive workup to confirm the diagnosis and determine the aetiology, and to devise a management plan.
- Episodes of acute decompensation.
- Worsening HF symptoms despite appropriate therapy.
- HF complicated with symptomatic hypotension or excessive bradycardia, limiting uptitration of pharmacotherapy.

- Symptomatic stable CAD and/or acute coronary syndrome for consideration of revascularisation (PCI or CABG).
- Resuscitated cardiac arrest.
- Documented or suspected significant arrhythmias e.g. AF, VT.
- Significant valvular disease not previously assessed or worsening valvular dysfunction.
- Pre-conception assessment and counselling of women with significant structural heart disease and a past history of HF or LV dysfunction.
- Complex congenital cardiac lesions and/or Eisenmenger's syndrome.

Key message 11:

- Heart Failure clinics will serve as an intermediary between in-patient hospital care and community primary care.

10. OTHER THERAPIES FOR HEART FAILURE

Despite taking conventional HF therapy, patients may seek alternative therapy and healing approaches that are not considered as allopathic medicine. The National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) defines complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) as a group of diverse medical and healthcare interventions, practices, products or disciplines that are not generally considered part of conventional medicine.

10.1 Enhanced External Counter Pulsation (EECP)

There is inadequate evidence of clinical effectiveness of EECP in HF.⁵¹⁰⁻⁵¹³ There is concern that it could precipitate or exacerbate HF.

10.2 Stem cell therapy

A global position paper on cardiovascular regenerative medicine stated that cell-based therapy in HF patients is neither positive nor consistent.⁵¹⁴

10.3 Omega 3 fatty acids

In patients with HF/EF, it may be considered as an adjunctive therapy based on a single randomised controlled trial (RCT) which showed a small benefit in CV death and/or hospitalisations.^{515,516}

10.4 Coenzyme Q10

There is no convincing evidence to support or refute the use of coenzyme Q10 for patients with HF.⁵¹⁷

10.5 Tai Chi

Tai Chi may improve 6 min walk test distance, quality of life and LVEF in patients with HF.^{518,519} Its effect on hard CV outcomes such as rehospitalisation, MI and mortality is not known.

10.6 Yoga

A meta-analysis in 2014 that includes two RCTs concluded that yoga improved peak VO₂ (exercise capacity) and quality of life in chronic HF patients.⁵²⁰ There is an ongoing RCT to look at the effect of yoga in HFpEF patients.⁵²¹

11. FUTURE DEVELOPMENT

The focus of future development for HF in Malaysia should be towards service enhancement working to meet the World Heart Federation mandate of a 25% reduction in premature non-communicable disease mortality by 2025.

Finding the balance between costs and quality remains a global challenge, and the understanding of the disease in our healthcare context is imperative to making sure we move forward regarding service delivery, human resource allocation, medical expense costs and patient outcomes. To achieve this, the following need to be undertaken:

- Epidemiological studies to understand the disease profile in the country.
- Establishment and expansion of HFCs leading to more patient-centred HF care.
- Expanding service delivery, human resource allocation, medical expense cost and patient outcomes.
- Education of healthcare personnel.

Efforts should be directed to the knowledge and understanding of the epidemiology of HF in our country, its phenotype, presentation, current adherence to guideline-directed therapy and outcomes. Regular cluster sampling cohorts or a nationwide registry should be considered. Understanding the limitations of service delivery albeit geography or human resources and making plans for better service delivery systems are important.

Development of HFCs, can lead to a more patient-centric HF care. (See Section 9, Pages 110-113)

Modules for HF care need to be initiated in order to train and educate general internal medicine physicians. A core-curriculum for education needs to be formed to ensure adequate training has been disseminated to HFC personnel.

Incentives regarding HF guidelines compliance should be implemented and HF innovative practice should be encouraged with awards for best clinical practice and innovation be made available.

This streamline approach to HF care with engagement of connected groups hopefully will help in better overall patient care and experience.

12. PERFORMANCE MEASURES

Performance measures should be used with the goal of improving quality of care for HF.^{518,519}

Process performance measures focus on the aspects of care that are delivered to a patient, while outcome measures focus on the end-points such as mortality or hospitalisation.

Process performance indicators for in-patients with HF includes:⁵²²⁻⁵²⁴

- % of patients who had documentation of NYHA Functional Class.
- % of patients who had LVEF measurement.
- % of patients with current or prior LVEF < 40% and without contraindications discharged with ACE-I/ARB.
- % of patients with current or prior LVEF < 40% and without contraindications discharged on β -blockers.
- % of patients with current or prior LVEF < 40% and without contraindications discharged on MRA.
- % of patients with chronic or paroxysmal AF/atrial flutter without contraindications on anticoagulant therapy at discharge.
- % of patients given a post discharge appointment.

The accepted performance measure should be more than 60%.

Outcome measures indicators include:

- In-hospital mortality
- 30-day readmission for HF

Refer to Appendix VI, Page 121 for calculation of these measures.

Appendix I: Causes of Elevated Natriuretic Peptide Levels*

Cardiac

- HF, including RV syndromes
- Acute coronary syndromes
- Heart muscle disease, including LVH
- Valvular heart disease
- Pericardial disease
- Atrial fibrillation
- Myocarditis
- Cardiac surgery
- Cardioversion
- Toxic-metabolic myocardial insults, including cancer chemotherapy

Non-cardiac

- Advancing age (Table 7, Page 44) for optimal cut off values according to age)
- Anaemia
- Renal failure:
 - NTproBNP lost its prognostic value in patients with GFR < 30ml/min/1.73 m².
 - BNP levels are relatively independent of GFR.
- Right ventricular overload from:
 - Pulmonary causes: obstructive sleep apnoea, severe pneumonia
 - Pulmonary hypertension whatever the cause
- Critical illness
- Bacterial sepsis
- Severe burns
- Liver cirrhosis

*Adapted from

- Yancy WC, Jessup M, Bozkut B, et al. 2017 ACC/AHA/HFSA Focused Update of the 2013 ACCF/AHA Guideline for the Management of Heart Failure. A Report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines and the Heart Failure Society of America. *Circulation* 2017;136:e137-61.
- Goei D, Schouten O, Boersma E, et al. Influence of renal function on the usefulness of N-terminal pro-B-type natriuretic peptide as a prognostic cardiac risk marker in patients undergoing noncardiac vascular surgery. *Am J Cardiol* 2008;101:122-6.
- Tagore R, Ling LH, Yang H, Daw HY, Chan YH, Sethi SK. Natriuretic peptides in chronic kidney disease. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 2008;3:1644-51.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

Appendix II: Salt Content of Common Malaysian Foods

CONTENT OF SODIUM IN FOODS			
Low Content	Moderate Content	High Content	
Fruit	Meat	Flavouring Agents	Sauces: Soya Tomato, Chili Barbeque
Vegetables	Fish		Tauchioh
Pure Oil	Egg		Vegetable(Marmite)
Natural Fats	Milk	Extract	Meat (Bovril)
Sugar		Enhancers	Monosodium Glutamate
Plain Flour			Flavouring cubes
Rice		Rising Agents	Bicarbonate of Soda
Most Cereals			Baking Powder
Legumes		Dressing	Salad Cream
Nuts			Mayonnaise
		Processed Food	Tinned or Canned Food
			● Salted Crisps
			● Salted Nuts
			● Cheese
			● Packed Soup
			● Raising Agents
		Preserved Food	Salted Fish/Eggs Cured
			Meat Preserved Sausages
			Vegetables/Fruits Belacan
		Medication	Effervescent Salts
			Bicarbonate Powder

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

Appendix III: Risk of Combined Contraceptive Pills for the Different Cardiac Conditions WHOMEC Risk Classification for the Use of Combined Hormonal Contraceptives*

MEC CLASS	WHOMEC 1	WHOMEC 2	WHOMEC 3	WHOMEC 4
Category of Use	Condition with no restriction for the use of contraceptive method	Condition where the advantages of the method generally outweigh the risks	Condition where the risks of the method usually outweigh the advantages and to consider all alternatives first	Conditions where the method represents an unacceptable health risk
	Always usable	Broadly usable	Caution in use	Do not use
Cardiac Conditions	Physiological murmurs in absence of heart disease	Most arrhythmias other than atrial fibrillation and flutter	Atrial fibrillation or flutter on warfarin	Atrial fibrillation or flutter if not anticoagulated
	Mitral valve prolapse with or without trivial mitral regurgitation	Uncomplicated mild native mitral and aortic valve disease	Bi-leaflet mechanical valve in mitral or aortic position taking warfarin	Pulmonary hypertension or pulmonary vascular disease (e.g. Eisenmenger syndrome)
	Bicuspid aortic valve with normal function	Tissue prosthetic valve lacking any of the features noted in WHOMEC 3 and WHOMEC 4	ASD with left to right shunt that may reverse with physiological stress (e.g. Valsalva manoeuvre)	Dilated left atrium > 4 cm
	Mild pulmonary stenosis	Surgically corrected congenital heart disease lacking any features noted in WHOMEC 3 and WHOMEC 4	Marfan syndrome with aortic dilatation unoperated	Fontan heart on warfarin
	Repaired coarctation with no hypertension or aneurysm	Small left to right shunt not reversible with physiological manoeuvres (e.g. small VSD, small PDA)	Past thrombotic event on Warfarin	Cyanotic heart disease
	Simple congenital lesions successfully repaired in childhood and with no sequelae e.g.	Uncomplicated Marfan syndrome		Pulmonary arteriovenous malformation
				Past thromboembolic event (venous and arterial) not on warfarin
				Poor left ventricle function of any cause (e.g. dilated cardiomyopathy) Ejection fraction < 30%
		Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy lacking any of the features noted in WHOMEC 3 and WHOMEC 4		Coronary artery disease
				Coronary arteritis (e.g. Kawasaki's disease) with coronary involvement
	Past cardiomyopathy fully recovered including peripartum cardiomyopathy			

*World Health Organization. Medical Eligibility Criteria (MEC) for Contraceptive use. (5th ed) 2015. Available at: www.who.int/reproductivehealth/publication/family_planning/Ex-SummMec-5/en/

Adapted From: Thorne S et al. Pregnancy and contraception in heart disease and pulmonary arterial hypertension. *J Fam Plann Reprod Health Care.* 2006; 32:75-81

Appendix IV: Safety of Progesterone Only Contraceptive Methods in Women with Cardiac Disease

Progesterone Only Contraceptive Method	Cardiac Condition	WHOMECC# Class
Progesterone only pill ^a <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Noriday[®] ● Cerazette^{®b} 	All cardiac conditions (should not normally be advised where pregnancy poses a high or unacceptable risk - WHOMECC Class 3 and 4 conditions)	1
Depo Provera	All cardiac patients who are not on warfarin	1
	All cardiac patients on warfarin	3
Implants e.g. (Nexplanon [®] previously known as Implanon [®])	All cardiac patients	1
Intra-Uterine System e.g. Mirena [®]	Cardiac patients generally even if taking warfarin ^d	1
	Structural heart disease ^e	2
	Prosthetic heart valves ^{d,e}	3
	Previous endocarditis ^e	3
	Pulmonary hypertension, Fontan circulation or other condition in which vagal reaction at insertion would be poorly tolerated	4(3)
Emergency contraception	All cardiac disease	1

#WHOMECC: World Heart Organization Medical Eligibility Criteria (see Appendix III, Page 118)

^aAlthough safe, the standard progestogen-only pill is less effective than all the other progestogen-only methods.

^bEfficacy reduced by Bosentan

^cRisk of haematoma at injection site

^dThe INR may be altered after initiation of any progesterone hormone therapy. It needs to be monitored.

^e Risk of Infective Endocarditis

From: Thorne S, MacGregor A, Nelson-Piercy C. Pregnancy and contraception in heart disease and pulmonary arterial hypertension. *J Fam Plann Reprod Health Care* 2006;32:75-81.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

Appendix V: Anticancer Agents Associated with Heart Failure / LV Dysfunction)

Chemotherapy Agents	Management
Anthracyclines Doxorubicin Epirubicin Idarubicin	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Monitor LVEF, strain assessment with global longitudinal strain, ● Measure troponins ● Consider use of dexrazoxane, continuous infusion, liposomal preparations, β-blockers, ACE-I
Alkylating agents Cyclophosphamide Ifosfamide	
Antimetabolites Decitabine Clofarabine	
Antimicrotubule agents Docetaxel	
Monoclonal antibody-based tyrosine kinase inhibitors Trastuzumab Bevacizumab Adostratumab emtacin Pertuzumab	Avoid concomitant use with anthracyclines
Small molecule tyrosine kinase inhibitors Pazopanib Sorafenib Sunitinib Lapatinib	Treat hypertension aggressively
Proteasome inhibitor Carfilzomib Bortezomib	

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

APPENDIX VI: Calculation of Performance and Outcome Measures

% of patients who had documentation of NYHA Functional Class	=	Number of patients who had documentation of <u>NYHA Functional Class</u> Number of HF patients who were seen during that time period	X 100
% of patients who had LVEF measurement	=	Number of patients who had <u>LVEF measurement</u> Number of HF patients who were seen during that time period	X 100
% of patients discharged with ACE-I / ARB	=	Number of patients who were on ACE-I / <u>ARB at discharge</u> Number of HF patients who were discharged during this time period who had no contraindications to ACE-I/ARB	X 100
% of patients discharged on β -blockers	=	Number of patients who were on β -blockers at <u>discharge</u> Number of HF patients who were discharged during that time period who had no contraindications to β -blockers	X 100
% of patients discharged on MRA	=	Number of patients who <u>were on MRA at discharge</u> Number of HF patients who were discharged during that time period who had no contraindications to MRA	X 100
% of patients with chronic or paroxysmal AF/Atrial Flutter on anticoagulant therapy(OAC) at discharge.	=	Number of patients who had AF/Atrial Flutter who <u>were on OAC at discharge</u> Number of HF patients who had AF/Atrial Flutter during that time period who had no contraindications to OAC at discharge	X 100
% of patients given a post discharge appointment	=	Number of patients who were given a post <u>discharge appointment</u> Number of HF patients who were seen during that time period	X 100

REFERENCES

- Davis RC, Hobbs FDR, Lip GYH. ABC of heart failure. History and epidemiology. *BMJ* 2000;320:39-42.
- Mendez GF, Cowie MR. The epidemiological features of heart failure in developing countries: a review of the literature. *Int J Cardio* 2001;80(2-3):213-9.
- McMurray JJ, Stewart S. Epidemiology, aetiology, and prognosis of heart failure. *Heart* 2000;83(5):596-602.
- Reyes EB, Ha JW, Firdaus I, et al. Heart failure across Asia: Same healthcare burden but differences in organization of care. *Int J Card* 2016; 223:163-7.
- Chong AY, Rajaratnam R, Hussein NR, Lip GY. Heart failure in a multiethnic population in Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia. *Eur J Heart Fail* 2003; 5(4):569-74.
- Teh BT, Lim MN, Robiah A, et al. Heart failure hospitalisation in Malaysia. *J of Cardiac Failure* 1999;3 (suppl 1):64.
- Go AS, Mozaffarian D, Roger VL, et al on behalf of the American Heart Association Statistics Committee and Stroke Statistics Subcommittee. AHA statistical update. Heart disease and stroke statistics - 2013 update. A report from the American Heart Association. *Circulation* 2013;127:e6-245.
- Jencks SF, Williams MV, Coleman EA. Rehospitalizations among patients in the medicare fee-for-service program. *N Engl J Med* 2009; 360:1418-28.
- The SOLVD Investigators. Effect of enalapril on mortality and the development of heart failure in asymptomatic patients with reduced left ventricular ejection fractions. *New Engl J Med* 1992;372:685-91.
- The CONSENSUS Trial study group. Effects of enalapril on mortality in severe congestive heart failure: results of the Cooperative North Scandinavian Enalapril Survival Study (CONSENSUS). *N Engl J Med* 1987;316:1429-35.
- National Cancer Institute. Cancer stat fact sheets. Available at <http://seer.cancer.gov/statfacts>. (Accessed 16 November 2018).
- Cook C, Cole G, Asaria P, Jabbour R, Francis DP. The annual global economic burden of heart failure. *Int J Card* 2014;171(3):368-76.
- Bery C, Murdoch DR, McMurray JJ. Economics of chronic heart failure. *Eur J Heart Fail* 2001;3(3):283-91.
- Sweitzer NK, Lopatin M, Yancy CW, Mills RM, Stevenson LW. Comparison of clinical features and outcomes of patients hospitalized with heart failure and normal ejection fraction (> or =55%) versus those with mildly reduced (40% to 55%) and moderately to severely reduced (< 40%) fractions. *Am J Cardiol* 2008;101:1151-6.
- Cheng RK, Cox M, Neely ML, et al. Outcomes in patients with heart failure with preserved, borderline, and reduced ejection fraction in the Medicare population. *Am Heart J* 2014;168:721-30.
- Wangs RJ, Evans JC, Benjamin EJ, et al. Natural history of asymptomatic left ventricular systolic dysfunction in the community. *Circulation* 2003;108: 977-82.
- Redfield MM, Jacobsen SJ, Burnett JC Jr, Mahoney DW, Bailey KR, Rodeheffer RJ. Burden of systolic and diastolic ventricular dysfunction in the community: appreciating the scope of the heart failure epidemic. *JAMA* 2003;289(2):194.
- Steinberg BA, Zhao X, Heidenreich PA, et al. Trends in patients hospitalized with heart failure and preserved left ventricular ejection fraction: prevalence, therapies, and outcomes. *Circulation* 2012;126:65-75.
- Drazner MH, Rame JE, Dries DL. Third heart sound and elevated jugular venous pressure as markers of the subsequent development of heart failure in patients with asymptomatic left ventricular dysfunction. *Am J Med* 2003;114:431-7.
- Maisel AS, Krishnaswamy P, Nowak RM, et al for Breathing Not Properly Multinational Study Investigators. Rapid measurement of B-type natriuretic peptide in the emergency diagnosis of heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 2002;347(3):161-7.
- Maisel AS, McCord J, Nowak RM, et al. Bedside B-type natriuretic peptide in the emergency diagnosis of heart failure with reduced or preserved ejection fraction. Results from the Breathing Not Properly Multinational Study. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2003;41(11):2010-7.
- Januzzi JL, van Kimmenade R, Lainchbury J, et al. NT-proBNP testing for diagnosis and short-term prognosis in acute destabilized heart failure: an international pooled analysis of 1256 patients: the International Collaborative of NT-proBNP Study. *Eur Heart J* 2006;27(3):330-7.
- Nielsen LS, Svanegaard J, Klitgaard NA, Egeblad H. N-terminal pro-brain natriuretic peptide for discriminating between cardiac and non-cardiac dyspnoea. *Eur J Heart Failure* 2004;6:63-70.
- Chenevier-Gobeaux C, Claessens YE, Voyer S, et al. Influence of renal function on N-terminal pro-brain natriuretic peptide (NT-proBNP) in patients admitted for dyspnoea in the Emergency Department: comparison with brain natriuretic peptide (BNP). *Clin Chim Acta* 2005;361(1-2):167-75.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

25. Srisawasdi P, Vanavanan S, Charoenpanichkit C, Kroll MH. The effect of renal dysfunction on BNP, NT-proBNP, and their ratio. *Am J Clin Path* 2010;133:1:14-23.
26. Takase H, Dohi Y. Kidney function crucially affects B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP), N-terminal proBNP and their relationship. *Eur J Clin Invest* 2014;44(3):303-8.
27. Hobbs FD, Davis RC, Roalfe AK, Hare R, Davies MK, Kenkre JE. Reliability of N-terminal pro-brain natriuretic peptide assay in diagnosis of heart failure: cohort study in representative and high risk community populations. *Br Med J* 2002; 324(7352):1498.
28. Savarese G, Musella F, D'Amore C, et al. Changes of natriuretic peptides predict hospital admissions in patients with chronic heart failure. A meta-analysis. *JACC Heart Failure* 2014;2(2):148-58.
29. Porapakham P, Porapakham P, Zimmet H, Billah B, Krum H. B-type natriuretic peptide-guided heart failure therapy: A meta-analysis. *Arch Intern Med* 2010;170:507-14.
30. Stienen S, Salah K, Moons AH, et al. NT-proBNP (N-Terminal pro-B-Type Natriuretic Peptide)-guided therapy in acute decompensated Heart Failure. PRIMA II Randomized Controlled Trial. *Circulation* 2017;137:1671-83.
31. Pufulete M, Maishman R, Dabner L, et al. B-type natriuretic peptide-guided therapy for heart failure (HF): a systematic review and meta-analysis of individual participant data (IPD) and aggregate data. *Systematic Reviews* 2018;7:112.
32. Felker GM, Anstrom KJ, Adams KF, et al for the GUIDE-IT Trial. Effect of natriuretic peptide-guided therapy on hospitalization or cardiovascular mortality in high-risk patients with heart failure and reduced ejection fraction. A randomized clinical trial. *JAMA* 2017;318(8):713-20.
33. WoldKnudsen C, Omland T, Clopton P, Westheim A, Wu AHB. Impact of atrial fibrillation on the diagnostic performance of B-type natriuretic peptide concentration in dyspneic patients: An analysis from the Breathing Not Properly Multinational Study. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2005;46:838-44.
34. Richards M, Di Somma S, Mueller C, et al. Atrial fibrillation impairs the diagnostic performance of cardiac natriuretic peptides in dyspneic patients. Results from the BACH Study (Biomarkers in ACute Heart Failure). *JACC Heart Failure* 2013;1:192-9.
35. Keyzer JM, Hoffmann JJ, Ringoir L, Nabbe KC, Widdershoven JW, Pop VJ. Age- and gender-specific brain natriuretic peptide (BNP) reference ranges in primary care. *Clin Chem Lab Med* 2014;52(9):1341-6.
36. Daniels LB, Clopton P, Bhalla V. How obesity affects the cut-points for B-type natriuretic peptide in the diagnosis of acute heart failure. Results from the Breathing Not Properly Multinational Study. *Am Heart J* 2006;151:999-1005.
37. Krauser DG, Lloyd-Jones DM, Chae CU, et al. Effect of body mass index on natriuretic peptide levels in patients with acute congestive heart failure: a ProBNP Investigation of Dyspnea in the Emergency Department (PRIDE) substudy. *Am Heart J* 2005;149(4):744-50.
38. Schocken DD, Benjamin EJ, Fonarow GC, et al. Prevention of heart failure. A Scientific Statement from the American Heart Association Councils on Epidemiology and Prevention, Clinical Cardiology, Cardiovascular Nursing, and High Blood Pressure Research; Quality of Care and Outcomes Research Interdisciplinary Working Group; and Functional Genomics and Translational Biology Interdisciplinary Working Group. *Circulation* 2008;117:2544-65.
39. Haider AW, Larson MG, Franklin SS, Levy D. Systolic blood pressure, diastolic blood pressure, and pulse pressure as predictors of risk for congestive heart failure in the Framingham Heart Study. *Ann Intern Med* 2003;138:10-16.
40. Moser M, Hebert PR. Prevention of disease progression, left ventricular hypertrophy and congestive heart failure in hypertension treatment trials. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 1996;27:1214-8.
41. Nichols GA, Gullion CM, Koro CE, Ephross SA, Brown JB. The incidence of congestive heart failure in type 2 diabetes: an update. *Diabetes Care* 2004;27(8):1879-84.
42. Bertoni AG, Tsai A, Kasper EK, Brancati FL. Diabetes and idiopathic cardiomyopathy: a nationwide case-control study. *Diabetes Care* 2003;26(10):2791-5.
43. Iribarren C, Karter AJ, Go AS, Ferrara A, Liu JY, Sidney S, Selby JV. Glycemic control and heart failure among adult patients with diabetes. *Circulation* 2001;103:2668-73.
44. Hubert HB, Feinleib M, McNamara PM, Castelli WP. Obesity as an independent risk factor for cardiovascular disease: a 26-year follow-up of participants in the Framingham Heart Study. *Circulation* 1983;67:968-77.
45. Moliterno DJ, Willard JE, Lange RA, et al. Coronary-artery vasoconstriction induced by cocaine, cigarette smoking, or both. *N Engl J Med* 1994;330(7):454-9.
46. Morrow JD, Frei B, Longmire AW, et al. Increase in circulating products of lipid peroxidation (F2-isoprostanes) in smokers. Smoking as a cause of oxidative damage. *N Engl J Med* 1995;332(18):1198-203.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

47. Schmidt-Ott UM, Ascheim DD. Thyroid hormone and heart failure. *Curr Heart Fail Rep* 2006;3(3):114-9.
48. Mitchell JE, Hellkamp AS, Mark DB, et al. Thyroid function in heart failure and impact on mortality. *JACC Heart Fail* 2013;1(1):48-55.
49. Javaheri S. Sleep-related breathing disorders in heart failure. In: Douglas L, Mann F, editors. *A companion to braunwald's heart disease*. Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 2010. pp. 471-87.
50. Herrscher TE, Akre H, Overland B, Sandvik L, Westheim AS. High prevalence of sleep apnea in heart failure outpatients: even in patients with preserved systolic function. *J Card Fail* 2011;17:420-5.
51. Baker DW. Prevention of heart failure. *J Card Fail* 2002;8:333-46.
52. Dahlöf B, Lindholm LH, Hansson L, et al. Morbidity and mortality in the Swedish trial in old patients with hypertension (STOPHypertension). *Lancet* 1991;338:1281-5.
53. Kostis JB, Davis BR, Cutler J, et al. Prevention of heart failure by antihypertensive drug treatment in older persons with isolated systolic hypertension: SHEP Cooperative Research Group. *JAMA* 1997;278:212-16.
54. Staessen JA, Fagard R, Thijs L, et al. Randomised double-blind comparison of placebo and active treatment for older patients with isolated systolic hypertension. The Systolic Hypertension in Europe (Syst-Eur) Trial Investigators. *Lancet* 1997;350: 757-64.
55. Beckett NS, Peters R, Fletcher AE, et al for the HYVET Study Group. Treatment of hypertension in patients 80 years of age or older. *N Engl J Med* 2008;358:1887-98.
56. Upadhy a B, Rocco M, Lewis CE, et al; SPRINT Research Group. Effect of intensive blood pressure treatment on heart failure events in the Systolic Blood Pressure Reduction Intervention Trial. *Circ Heart Fail* 2017;10(4). pii: e003613.
57. Williamson JD, Supiano MA, Applegate WB, et al. Intensive vs standard blood pressure control and cardiovascular disease outcomes in adults aged > 75 years. A randomized trial. *JAMA* 2016;315:2673-82.
58. Djouss'e L, Driver JA, Gaziano JM. Relation between modifiable lifestyle factors and lifetime risk of heart failure. *Physicians Health Study 1*. *JAMA* 2009;302:4:394-400.
59. Wilhelmsen L, Rosengren A, Eriksson H, Lappas G. Heart failure in the general population of men – morbidity, risk factors and prognosis. *J Int Med* 2001;249:253-61.
60. Suskin N, Sheth T, Negassa A, Yusuf S. Relationship of current and past smoking to mortality and morbidity in patients with left ventricular dysfunction. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2001;37:1677-82.
61. Ministry of Health Malaysia. Malaysian Clinical Practice Guidelines on Prevention of Cardiovascular Disease. 1st Ed, 2018. Available at www.acadmed.org
62. Taylor F, Ward K, Moore TH, et al. Statins for the primary prevention of cardiovascular disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2011;19;(1):CD004816.
63. The Cholesterol Treatment Trialists Collaborators. The effects of lowering LDL cholesterol with statin therapy in people at low risk of vascular disease: meta-analysis of individual data from 27 randomised trials. *Lancet* 2012;380;(9841):581-90.
64. Ministry of Health Malaysia. Malaysian Clinical Practice Guidelines on Management of Dyslipidemia. 5th Ed [Internet], 2017. Available at www.acadmed.org
65. Saravanan P, Davidson NC, Schmidt EB, Calder PC. Cardiovascular effects of marine omega-3 fatty acids. *Lancet* 2010;376(9740):540-50.
66. Wilk JB, Tsai MY, Hanson NQ, Gaziano JM, Djouss'e L. Plasma and dietary omega-3 fatty acids, fish intake, and heart failure risk in the Physicians' Health Study. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2012;96(4):882-8.
67. Roncaglioni MC, Tombesi M, Avanzini F, et al for the Risk and Prevention Study Collaborative Group. n-3 fatty acids in patients with multiple cardiovascular risk factors. *N Engl J Med* 2013;368(19):1800-8.
68. Saidi A, Alharethi R. Management of chemotherapy induced cardiomyopathy. *Curr Cardiol Rev* 2011;7(4):245-9.
69. Bosch X, Rovira M, Sitges M, et al. Enalapril and carvedilol for preventing chemotherapy-induced left ventricular systolic dysfunction in patients with malignant hemopathies: the OVERCOME trial (prevention of left Ventricular dysfunction with Enalapril and caRvedilol in patients submitted to intensive Chemotherapy for the treatment of Malignant hEmopathies). *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2013;61(23):2355-62.
70. Bradley TD, Logan AG, Kimoff RJ, et al; CANPAP Investigators. Continuous positive airway pressure for central sleep apnea and heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 2005;353:2025-33.
71. McEvoy RD, Antic NA, Heeley E, et al; SAVE Investigators and Coordinators. CPAP for prevention of cardiovascular events in obstructive sleep apnea. *N Engl J Med* 2016;375:919-31.
72. Cowie MR, Woehrle H, Wegscheider K, et al. Adaptive servo-ventilation for central sleep apnea in systolic heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 2015;373:1095-105.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

73. De Luca G, Suryapranata H, Zijlstra F, et al. Symptom-onset-to-balloon time and mortality in patients with acute myocardial infarction treated by primary angioplasty. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2003;42(6):991-7.
74. Nallamothu BK, Bates ER. Percutaneous coronary intervention versus fibrinolytic therapy in acute myocardial infarction: is timing (almost) everything? *Am J Cardiol* 2003;92(7):824-6.
75. Keeley EC, Boura JA, Grines CL. Primary angioplasty versus intravenous thrombolytic therapy for acute myocardial infarction: a quantitative review of 23 randomised trials. *Lancet* 2003;361(9351):13-20.
76. Sabatine MS, Cannon CP, Gibson CM, et al for the CLARITY-TIMI 28 Investigators. Addition of clopidogrel to aspirin and fibrinolytic therapy for myocardial infarction with ST-segment elevation. *N Engl J Med* 2005;352:1179-89.
77. COMMIT collaborative group. Addition of clopidogrel to aspirin in 45852 patients with acute myocardial infarction: randomised, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet* 2005;366: 1607-21.
78. Wiviott SD, Braunwald E, McCabe CH, et al. Prasugrel versus clopidogrel in patients with acute coronary syndromes. *N Engl J Med* 2007;357(20):2001-15.
79. Steg PG, James S, Harrington RA, et al. Ticagrelor versus clopidogrel in patients with ST-elevation acute coronary syndromes intended for reperfusion with primary percutaneous coronary intervention: A Platelet Inhibition and Patient Outcomes (PLATO) trial subgroup analysis. *Circulation* 2010;122(21):2131-41.
80. Gottlieb SS, McCarter RJ, Vogel RA, et al. Effect of beta-blockade on mortality among high risk and low risk patients after myocardial infarction. *N Engl J Med* 1998; 339:489-97.
81. Yusuf S, Peto R, Lewis J, et al. Beta blockade during and after myocardial infarction: An overview of the randomized trials. *Prog Cardiovasc Dis* 1985;27:335-43.
82. ACE-Inhibitor MI Collaborative group. Evidence for early beneficial effect of ACE inhibitors started within the first day in patients with AMI: Results of systematic overview among 100000 patients. *Circulation* 1996;94:1-90.
83. Fonarow GC, Wright S, Spencer FA, et al. Effect of statin use within the first 24 hours of admission for AMI on early morbidity and mortality. *Am J Cardiol* 2005;96:611-6.
84. Cannon CP, Braunwald E, McCabe CH, et al. Comparison of intensive and moderate lipid lowering with statins after acute coronary syndromes. *N Engl J Med* 2004;350:1562-4.
85. Larstorp AC, Okin PM, Devereux RB, et al. Regression of ECG-LVH is associated with lower risk of new-onset heart failure and mortality in patients with isolated systolic hypertension; The LIFE study. *Am J Hypertens* 2012;25(10):1101-9.
86. Baumgartner H, Falk V, Bax JJ, et al; ESC Scientific Document Group. 2017 ESC/EACTS Guidelines for the Management of Valvular Heart Disease. *Eur Heart J* 2017;38(36):2739-91.
87. Umana E, Solares CA, Alpert MA. Tachycardia-induced cardiomyopathy. *Am J Med* 2003;114(1):51-5.
88. Fox KM. Efficacy of perindopril in reduction of cardiovascular events among patients with stable coronary artery disease: randomized, double blind, placebo-controlled, multicenter trial (the EUROPA study). *Lancet* 2003;362:782-8.
89. Braunwald E, Domanski MJ, Fowler SE, et al. PEACE Trial Investigators. Angiotensin-converting-enzyme inhibition in stable coronary artery disease. *N Engl J Med* 2004;351:2058-68.
90. Heart Outcomes Prevention Evaluation Study Investigators. Effects of ramipril on cardiovascular and microvascular outcomes in people with diabetes mellitus: results of the HOPE study and MICRO-HOPE substudy. *Lancet* 2000;355:253-9.
91. Lindholm LH, Ibsen H, Dahlöf B, et al for the LIFE study group. Cardiovascular morbidity and mortality in patients with diabetes in the Losartan Intervention For Endpoint reduction in hypertension study (LIFE): a randomised trial against atenolol. *Lancet* 2002;359:1004-10.
92. The On-Target Investigators. Telmisartan, ramipril, or both in patients at high risk for vascular events. *N Engl J Med* 2008;358:1547-59.
93. Gheorghade M, Goldstein S. β -Blockers in the post-myocardial infarction patient. *Circulation* 2002;106:394-8.
94. Ebert GA, Colivicchi F, Caracciolo MM, Riccio C. Additive beneficial effects of beta blockers in the prevention of symptomatic heart failure. *Monaldi Arch Chest Dis* 2009;72(1):18-22.
95. Zinman B, Wanner C, Lachin JM, et al. SE, EMPA-REG OUTCOME Investigators. Empagliflozin, cardiovascular outcomes, and mortality in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med* 2015;373:2117-28.
96. Neal B, Perkovic V, Mahaffey KW, et al. for the CANVAS Program Collaborative Group. Canagliflozin and cardiovascular and renal events in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med* 2017;377:644-57.
97. Mahaffey KW, Neal B, Perkovic V, et al for and on behalf of the CANVAS Program Collaborative Group. Canagliflozin for primary and secondary prevention of cardiovascular events. Results from the CANVAS Program (Canagliflozin Cardiovascular Assessment Study). *Circulation* 2017;137:323-34.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

98. Wiviott SD, Raz I, Bonaca MP, et al for the DECLARE–TIMI 58 Investigators. Dapagliflozin and cardiovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med* 2019;380(4):347-57.
99. Stub D, Smith K, Bernard S, et al for the AVOID Investigators. Air versus oxygen in ST-segment-elevation myocardial infarction. *Circulation* 2015;131:2143-50.
100. Cabello JB, Burls A, Emparanza JI, Bayliss SE, Quinn T. Oxygen therapy for acute myocardial infarction (Review). *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2016;12:CD007160.
101. Hofmann R, James SK, Jernberg T, et al for the DETOX–SWEDEHEART Investigators. Oxygen therapy in suspected acute myocardial infarction. *N Engl J Med* 2017;377:1240-9.
102. Park JH, Balmain S, Berry C, Morton JJ, McMurray JJ. Potentially detrimental cardiovascular effects of oxygen in patients with chronic left ventricular systolic dysfunction. *Heart* 2010;96(7):533-8.
103. Shuvy M, Atar D, Steg PG, Halvorsen S, Jolly S, Yusuf S, Lotan C. Oxygen therapy in acute coronary syndrome: are the benefits worth the risk? *Eur Heart J* 2013;34: 1630-5.
104. Sjöberg F, Singer M. The medical use of oxygen: a time for critical reappraisal. *J Intern Med* 2013;274(6):505-28.
105. Helviz Y, Einav S. A systematic review of the high-flow nasal cannula for adult patients. *Crit Care* 2018;22:71.
106. Ni YN, Luo J, Yu H, et al. Can high-flow nasal cannula reduce the rate of endotracheal intubation in adult patients with acute respiratory failure compared with conventional oxygen therapy and noninvasive positive pressure ventilation? A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Chest* 2017;151:764-75.
107. Masip J, Betbese AJ, Paex J, et al. Noninvasive pressure support ventilation versus continuous oxygen therapy in acute cardiogenic pulmonary edema: a randomized trial. *Lancet* 2000;356:2126-32.
108. Mehta S, Jay GD, Wollard RH, et al. Randomized, prospective trial of bilevel versus continuous positive airway pressure in acute pulmonary edema. *Crit Care Med* 1997;25:620-8.
109. Pang D, Keenan SP, Cook DJ, Sibbald WJ. The effect of positive pressure airway support on mortality and the need for intubation in cardiogenic pulmonary edema: a systematic review. *Chest* 1998;114:1185-92.
110. Gray A, Goodacre S, Newby DE, Masson M, Sampson F, Nicholl J for the 3CPO Trialists. Noninvasive ventilation in acute cardiogenic pulmonary edema. *N Engl J Med* 2008;359:142-51.
111. Masip J, Roque M, Sanchez B, Fernandez R, Subirana M, Exposito JA. Non invasive ventilation in acute cardiogenic pulmonary edema: systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA* 2005;294(24):3124-30.
112. Ho KM, Wong K. A comparison of continuous and bi-level positive airway pressure non-invasive ventilation in patients with acute cardiogenic pulmonary oedema: a meta-analysis. *Crit Care* 2006;10:R49.
113. Li H, Hu C, Xia J, et al. A comparison of bilevel and continuous positive airway pressure noninvasive ventilation in acute cardiogenic pulmonary edema. *Am J Emerg Med* 2013;31:1322-7.
114. Brater DC. Diuretic therapy. *N Engl J Med* 1998; 339:387-95.
115. Ng KT, Yap JLL. Continuous infusion vs. intermittent bolus injection of furosemide in acute decompensated heart failure: systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. *Anaesthesia* 2018;73(2):238-47.
116. Salvador DR, Rey NR, Ramos GC, Punzalan FE. Continuous infusion versus bolus injection of loop diuretics in congestive heart failure. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2004;(1):CD003178.
117. Ng KT, Velayit A, Khoo DKY, Mohd Ismail A, Mansor M. Continuous infusion versus intermittent bolus injection of furosemide in critically ill patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2018;32(5):2303-10.
118. Triposkiadis FK, Butler J, Karayannis G, et al. Efficacy and safety of high dose versus low dose furosemide with or without dopamine infusion: the Dopamine in Acute Decompensated Heart Failure II (DAD-HF II) trial. *Int J Cardiol* 2014;172(1):115-21.
119. Publication Committee for the VMAC Investigators (Vasodilatation in the Management of Acute CHF). Intravenous nesiritide vs nitroglycerin for treatment of decompensated congestive heart failure: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2002;287(12):1531-40.
120. Wakai A, McCabe A, Kidney R, et al. Nitrates for acute heart failure syndromes. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2013;(8):CD005151.
121. Bertini G, Giglioli C, Biggeri A, et al. Intravenous nitrates in the prehospital management of acute pulmonary edema. *Ann Emerg Med* 1997;30(4):493-9.
122. Hoffman JR, Reynold S. Comparison of nitroglycerin, morphine and frusemide in treatment of presumed pre-hospital pulmonary edema. *Chest* 1987;92:586-93.
123. Cotter G, Metzkor E, Kaluski E, et al. Randomised trial of high dose isosorbide dinitrate plus low dose furosemide versus high dose furosemide plus low dose isosorbide dinitrate in severe pulmonary oedema. *Lancet* 1998;351:389-93.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

124. Sharon A, Shpirer I, Kaluski E, et al. High-dose intravenous isosorbide-dinitrate is safer and better than Bi-PAP ventilation combined with conventional treatment for severe pulmonary edema. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2000;36(3):832-7.
125. Guiha NH, Cohn JN, Mikulic E, et al. Treatment of refractory heart failure with infusion of nitroprusside. *N Engl J Med* 1974;291:587-92.
126. Cuffe MS, Califf RM, Adams KF, Jr, et al. Short-term intravenous milrinone for acute exacerbation of chronic heart failure: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2002;287:1541-7.
127. Tacon CL, McCaffrey J, Delaney A. Dobutamine for patients with severe heart failure – a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. *Intensive Care Med* 2012;38(3):359-67.
128. Giamouzis G, Butler J, Starling RC, et al. Impact of dopamine infusion on renal function in hospitalized heart failure patients: results of the Dopamine in Acute Decompensated Heart Failure (DAD-HF) Trial. *J Card Fail* 2010;16(12):922-30.
129. Capomolla S, Pozzoli M, Opasich C, et al. Dobutamine and nitroprusside infusion in patients with severe congestive heart failure: hemodynamic improvement by discordant effects on mitral regurgitation, left atrial function, and ventricular function. *Am Heart J* 1997;134:1089-98.
130. Burger AJ, Horton DP, LeJemtel T, et al. Effect of nesiritide (B-type natriuretic peptide) and dobutamine on ventricular arrhythmias in the treatment of patients with acutely decompensated congestive heart failure: the PRECEDENT study. *Am Heart J* 2002;144:1102-8.
131. De Backer D, Biston P, Devriendt J, et al for the SOAP II Investigators. Comparison of dopamine and norepinephrine in the treatment of shock. *N Engl J Med* 2010; 362:779-89.
132. Rui Q, Jiang Y, Chen M, Zhang N, Yang H, Zhou Y. Dopamine versus norepinephrine in the treatment of cardiogenic shock. A PRISMA-compliant meta-analysis. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2017; 96(43):e8402.
133. Levy B, Perez P, Perny J, Thivillier C, Gerard A. Comparison of norepinephrine-dobutamine to epinephrine for hemodynamics, lactate metabolism, and organ function variables in cardiogenic shock. A prospective, randomized pilot study. *Crit Care Med* 2011;39(3):450-5.
134. Vismara LA, Leaman DM, Zelis R. The effect of morphine on venous tone in patients with acute pulmonary edema. *Circulation* 1976;54:335-7.
135. Sosnowski MA. Review article: Lack of effect of opiates on the treatment of acute cardiogenic pulmonary edema. *Emerg Med Australasia* 2008;20:384-90.
136. Peacock WF, Hollander JE, Diercks DB, Lopatin M, Fonarow G, Emerman CL. Morphine and outcomes in acute decompensated heart failure: an ADHERE analysis. *Emerg Med J* 2008;25(4):205-9.
137. Binanay C, Califf RM, Hasselblad V, et al; ESCAPE Investigators and ESCAPE Study Coordinators. Evaluation study of congestive heart failure and pulmonary artery catheterization effectiveness: the ESCAPE trial. *JAMA* 2005;294(13):1625-33.
138. Shah MR, Hasselblad V, Stevenson LW, et al. Impact of the pulmonary artery catheter in critically ill patients: meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. *JAMA* 2005;294(13):1664-70.
139. Harvey S, Stevens K, Harrison D, et al. An evaluation of the clinical and cost-effectiveness of pulmonary artery catheters in patient management in intensive care: a systematic review and a randomised controlled trial. *Health Technol Assess* 2006;10(29):iii-iv, ix-xi, 1-133.
140. Thompson CR, Buller CE, Sleeper LA, et al. Cardiogenic shock due to acute severe mitral regurgitation complicating acute myocardial infarction: a report from the SHOCK Trial Registry. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2000;36(3s1):1104-9.
141. Stone GW, Ohman EM, Miller MF, et al. Contemporary utilization and outcomes of intra-aortic balloon counterpulsation in acute myocardial infarction: The benchmark registry. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2003;41(11):1940-5.
142. Romeo F, Acconcia MC, Sergi D, et al. The outcome of intra-aortic balloon pump support in acute myocardial infarction complicated by cardiogenic shock according to the type of revascularization: a comprehensive meta-analysis. *Am Heart J* 2013;165(5):679-92.
143. Thiele H, Zeymer U, Neumann FJ, et al. Intraaortic balloon support for myocardial infarction with cardiogenic shock. *N Engl J Med* 2012;367(14):1287-96.
144. Thiele H, Zeymer U, Neumann F-J, et al. Intra-aortic balloon counterpulsation in acute myocardial infarction complicated by cardiogenic shock (IABP-SHOCK II): final 12 month results of a randomised, open-label trial. *Lancet* 2013;382:1638-45.
145. Thiele H, Sick P, Boudriot E, et al. Randomized comparison of intra-aortic balloon support with a percutaneous left ventricular assist device in patients with revascularized acute myocardial infarction complicated by cardiogenic shock. *Eur Heart J* 2005;26:1276-83.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

146. Seyfarth M, Sibbing D, Bauer I, et al. A randomized clinical trial to evaluate the safety and efficacy of a percutaneous left ventricular assist device versus intra-aortic balloon pumping for treatment of cardiogenic shock caused by myocardial infarction. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2008;52:1584-8.
147. Greenberg B, Czarska B, Delgado RM, et al. Effects of continuous aortic flow augmentation in patients with exacerbation of heart failure inadequately responsive to medical therapy: results of the Multicenter Trial of the Orqis Medical Cancion System for the Enhanced Treatment of Heart Failure Unresponsive to Medical Therapy (MOMENTUM). *Circulation* 2008;118:1241-9.
148. Gheorghiadu M, Konstam MA, Burnett JC Jr, et al; Efficacy of Vasopressin Antagonism in Heart Failure Outcome Study With Tolvaptan (EVEREST) Investigators. Short-term clinical effects of tolvaptan, an oral vasopressin antagonist, in patients hospitalized for heart failure: the EVEREST Clinical Status Trials. *JAMA* 2007;297:1332-43.
149. Konstam MA, Gheorghiadu M, Burnett JC Jr, et al; Efficacy of Vasopressin Antagonism in Heart Failure Outcome Study With Tolvaptan (EVEREST) Investigators. Effects of oral tolvaptan in patients hospitalized for worsening heart failure: the EVEREST Outcome Trial. *JAMA* 2007;297:1319-31.
150. Packer M, Colucci W, Fisher L, et al. Effect of levosimendan on the short-term clinical course of patients with acutely decompensated heart failure. *JCHF* 2013;1(2):103-11.
151. O'Connor CM, Starling RC, Hernandez AF, et al. Effect of nesiritide in patients with acute decompensated heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 2011;365:32-43.
152. Hampton JR. Results of clinical trials with diuretics in heart failure. *Br Heart J* 1994; 72:(suppl):68-72.
153. Hammarlund MM, Paalzow LK, Odlin B. Pharmacokinetics of furosemide in man after intravenous and oral administration. Application of moment analysis. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol* 1984;26(2):197-207.
154. Garg R, Yusuf S. Overview of randomized trials of angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors on mortality and morbidity in patients with heart failure. Collaborative Group on ACE Inhibitor Trials. *JAMA* 1995;273:1450-6.
155. Flather MD, Yusuf S, Kober L, et al. Long-term ACE-inhibitor therapy in patients with heart failure or left-ventricular dysfunction: a systematic overview of data from individual patients. ACE-Inhibitor Myocardial Infarction Collaborative Group. *Lancet* 2000;355:1575-81.
156. Packer M, Coats ASS, Fowler MB, et al. Effect of carvedilol on survival in severe chronic heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 2001;344:1651-8.
157. The CAPRICORN Investigators. Effect of carvedilol on outcomes after myocardial infarction in patients with left ventricular dysfunction: the CAPRICORN randomized trial. *Lancet* 2001;357:1385-90.
158. Australia-New Zealand Heart failure Research Collaborative Group. Randomised, placebo-controlled trial of carvedilol in patients with congestive heart failure due to ischemic heart disease. *Lancet* 1997;349:375-80.
159. Willenheimer R, van Veldhuisen DJ, Silke B, et al. Effect on survival and hospitalization of initiating treatment for chronic heart failure with bisoprolol followed by enalapril, as compared with the opposite sequence. Results of the Randomized Cardiac Insufficiency Bisoprolol Study (CIBIS) III. *Circulation* 2005;112:2426-35.
160. MERIT-HF Study Group. Effect of metoprolol CR/XL in chronic heart failure: Metoprolol CR/XL randomized Intervention Trial in Congestive Heart Failure (MERIT-HF). *Lancet* 1999;353:2001-7.
161. Poole-Wilson PA, Swedberg K, Cleland JG, et al. Comparison of carvedilol and metoprolol on clinical outcomes in patients with CHF in the Carvedilol Or Metoprolol European Trial (COMET): randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2003;362:7-13.
162. Pitt B, Zannad F, Remme WJ, et al. for the Randomized Aldactone Evaluation Study Investigators. The effect of spironolactone on morbidity and mortality in patients with severe heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 1999;341:709-17.
163. Pitt B, Remme W, Zannad F, et al. Eplerenone, a selective aldosterone blocker, in patients with left ventricular dysfunction after myocardial infarction. *N Engl J Med* 2003;348:1309-21.
164. Zannad F, McMurray JJV, Krum H, et al for the EMPHASIS-HF Study Group. Eplerenone in patients with systolic heart failure and mild symptoms. *N Engl J Med* 2011;364:11-21.
165. Ronco C, McCullough P, Anker SD, et al for the Acute Dialysis Quality Initiative (ADQI) consensus group. Cardio-renal syndromes: report from the consensus conference of the Acute Dialysis Quality Initiative. *Eur Heart J* 2010;31(6):703-11.
166. Goldberg RJ, Spencer FA, Gore JM, Lessard D, Yarzebski J. Thirty-year trends (1975 to 2005) in the magnitude of, management of, and hospital death rates associated with cardiogenic shock in patients with acute myocardial infarction: a population-based perspective. *Circulation* 2009;119(9):1211-9.
167. Babaev A, Frederick PD, Pasta DJ, et al. Trends in management and outcomes of patients with acute myocardial infarction complicated by cardiogenic shock. *JAMA* 2005;294(4):448-54.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

168. Taylor RS, Sagar VA, Davies EJ, et al. Exercise-based rehabilitation for heart failure. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2014;CD003331.
169. Taylor RS, Davies EJ, Dalal HM, et al. Effects of exercise training for heart failure with preserved ejection fraction: a systematic review and meta-analysis of comparative studies. *Int J Cardiol* 2012;162:6-13.
170. Smart N, Marwick TH. Exercise training for patients with heart failure: a systematic review of factors that improve mortality and morbidity. *Am J Med* 2004;116:693-706.
171. Davies EJ, Moxham T, Rees K, et al. Exercise training for systolic heart failure: Cochrane systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur J Heart Fail* 2010;12:706-15.
172. Ismail H, McFarlane JR, Nojournian AH, Dieberg G, Smart NA. Clinical outcomes and cardiovascular responses to different exercise training intensities in patients with heart failure: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *JACC Heart Fail* 2013;1:514-22.
173. O'Connor CM, Whellan DJ, Lee KL, et al. Efficacy and safety of exercise training in patients with chronic heart failure: HF-ACTION randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2009;301:1439-50.
174. Edelmann F, Gelbrich G, Dungen HD, et al. Exercise training improves exercise capacity and diastolic function in patients with heart failure with preserved ejection fraction: results of the Ex-DHF (Exercise training in Diastolic Heart Failure) pilot study. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2011;58:1780-91.
175. Kitzman DW, Brubaker PH, Herrington DM, et al. Effect of endurance exercise training on endothelial function and arterial stiffness in older patients with heart failure and preserved ejection fraction: a randomized, controlled, single-blind trial. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2013;62:584-92.
176. Nolte K, Herrmann-Lingen C, Wachter R, et al. Effects of exercise training on different quality of life dimensions in heart failure with preserved ejection fraction: the Ex-DHF-P trial. *Eur J Prev Cardiol* 2015;22:582-93.
177. Arcand J, Ivanov J, Sasson A, et al. A high-sodium diet is associated with acute decompensated heart failure in ambulatory heart failure patients: a prospective follow-up study. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2011;93:332-7.
178. Colin-Ramirez E, McAlister FA, Zheng Y, et al. The long-term effects of dietary sodium restriction on clinical outcomes in patients with heart failure. The SODIUM-HF (Study of Dietary Intervention Under 100 mmol in Heart Failure): a pilot study. *Am Heart J* 2015;169:274-81.e1.
179. Doukky R, Avery E, Mangla A, et al. Impact of dietary sodium restriction on heart failure outcomes. *JACC Heart Fail* 2016;4:24-35.
180. Aliti GB, Rabelo ER, Clausell N, et al. Aggressive fluid and sodium restriction in acute decompensated heart failure: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA Intern Med* 2013;173:1058-64.
181. Gupta D, Georgiopoulos VV, Kaloogeropoulos AP, et al. Dietary sodium intake in heart failure. *Circulation* 2012;126:479-85.
182. Philipson H, Ekman I, Forslund HB, Swedberg K, Schaefelberger M. Salt and fluid restriction is effective in patients with chronic heart failure. *Eur J Heart Fail* 2013;15(11):1304-10.
183. Alvelos M, Ferreira A, Bettencourt P, et al. The effect of dietary sodium restriction on neurohumoral activity and renal dopaminergic response in patients with heart failure. *Eur J Heart Fail* 2004;6:593-9.
184. Holst M, Stromberg A, Lindholm M, Willenheimer R. Liberal versus restricted fluid prescription in stabilised patients with chronic heart failure: result of a randomised cross-over study of the effects on health related quality of life, physical capacity, thirst and morbidity. *Scand Cardiovasc J* 2008;42:316-22.
185. Travers B, O'Loughlin C, Murphy NF, et al. Fluid restriction in the management of decompensated heart failure: no impact on time to clinical stability. *J Card Fail* 2007;13:128-32.
186. Laonigro I, Correale M, Di Biase M, Altomare E. Alcohol abuse and heart failure. *Eur J Heart Fail* 2009;11:453-62.
187. Van Driel AG, De Hossou MJ, Gamel C. Sexuality of patients with chronic heart failure and their spouses and the need for information regarding sexuality. *Eur J Cardiovasc Nurs* 2014;13(3):227-34.
188. Hoekstra T, Jaarsma T, Sanderman R, et al. Perceived sexual difficulties and associated factors in patients with heart failure. *Am Heart J* 2012;163(2):246-51.
189. Jaarsma T, Stromberg A, Fridlund B, et al. Sexual counselling of cardiac patients: Nurses' perception of practice, responsibility and confidence. *Eur J Cardiovasc Nurs* 2010;9:24-9.
190. Steinke E, Jaarsma T. Sexual counseling and cardiovascular disease – Practical approaches. *Asian J Androl* 2015;17:32-9.
191. Jaarsma T, Steinke E, Gianotten W. Sexual problems in cardiac patients. How to assess, when to refer. *J Cardiovasc Nurs* 2010;25(2):159-64.
192. Oakley CM, Child A, Lung B, et al. Expert consensus document on management of cardiovascular diseases during pregnancy. The Task Force on the Management of Cardiovascular Diseases during Pregnancy of the European Society of Cardiology. *Eur Heart J* 2003;24:761-81.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

193. Ministry of Health Malaysia. Clinical Practice Guidelines on Heart Disease in Pregnancy, 2nd Ed, 2016. Available at www.acadmed.com.my
194. World Health Organization. Medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use: A WHO family planning cornerstone (4th ed). Geneva; 2010. Available at https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK138639/pdf/Bookshelf_NBK138639.pdf (Accessed 6 April 2019).
195. Roos-Hesselink JW, Cornette J, Sliwa K, Pieper PG, Veldtman GR, Johnson MR. Contraception and cardiovascular disease. *Eur Heart J* 2015;36(27):1728-34.
196. Pearce SG, Cowie MR. Sleep disordered breathing in heart failure. *Eur J Heart Fail* 2016;18:353-61.
197. Artz M, Woehrle H, Oldenburg O, et al; SchlaHF Investigators. Prevalence and predictors of sleep disordered breathing in patients with stable chronic heart failure. *JACC: Heart Failure* 2016;4(2):116-25.
198. Naughton MT, Kee K. Sleep apnea in heart failure. To treat or not to treat? *Respirology* 2017;22:217-29.
199. Constanzo MR, Khayat R, Ponikowski P, et al. Mechanisms and clinical consequences of untreated central sleep apnea in heart failure. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2015;65(1):72-84.
200. Lyons OD, Floras JS, Logan AG, et al. Design of the effect of adaptive servo-ventilation on survival and cardiovascular hospital admissions in patients with heart failure and sleep apnea: the ADVENT-HF trial. *Eur J Heart Fail* 2017;19:579-87.
201. Gallager R, Luttk ML, Jaarsma T. Social support and self-care in heart failure. *J Cardiovasc Nurs* 2011;26(6):439-45.
202. Luttk ML, Jaarsma T, Moser D, et al. The importance and impact of social support on outcomes in patients with heart failure: An overview of the literature. *J Cardiovasc Nurs* 2005;20:162-9.
203. Struthers AD, Anderson G, Donnan PT, et al. Social deprivation increases cardiac hospitalizations in chronic heart failure independent of disease severity and diuretic non-adherence. *Heart* 2000;83:12-6.
204. Huerta C, Varas-Lorenzo C, Castellsague J, Garcia Rodriguez LA. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and risk of first hospital admission for heart failure in the general population. *Heart* 2006;92:1610-5
205. Dormans TP, Gerlag PG, Russel FG, et al. Combination diuretic therapy in severe congestive cardiac failure. *Drugs* 1998;55:165-72.
206. Kissling KT, Pickworth KK. Comparison of the effects of combination diuretic therapy with oral hydrochlorothiazide or intravenous chlorothiazide in patients receiving intravenous furosemide therapy for the treatment of heart failure. *Pharmacotherapy* 2014;34(8):882-7.
207. Jentzer JC, DeWald TA, Hernandez AF. Combination of loop diuretics with thiazide-type diuretics in heart failure. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2010;56:1527-34.
208. Brisco-Bacik MA, Ter Maaten JM, Houser SR, et al. Outcomes associated with a strategy of adjuvant metolazone or high-dose loop diuretics in acute decompensated heart failure: a propensity analysis. *JAHA* 2018;7:e009149.
209. Rosenberg J, Gustafsson F, Galatius S, Hildebrandt PR. Combination therapy with metolazone and loop diuretics in outpatients with refractory heart failure: an observational study and review of the literature. *Cardiovasc Drugs Ther* 2005;19(4):30-6.
210. Moranville MP, Choi S, Hogg J, Anderson AS, Rich JD. Comparison of metolazone versus chlorothiazide in acute decompensated heart failure with diuretic resistance. *Cardiovasc Ther* 2015;33(2):42-9.
211. Dargie HJ, Allison ME, Kennedy AC, Gray MJ. High dosage metolazone in chronic renal failure. *Br Med J* 1972;4(5834):196.
212. Wollam GL, Tarazi RC, Bravo EL, Dustan HP. Diuretic potency of combined hydrochlorothiazide and furosemide therapy in patients with azotemia. *Am J Med* 1982;72(6):929.
213. Fliser D, Schröter M, Neubeck M, Ritz E. Coadministration of thiazides increases the efficacy of loop diuretics even in patients with advanced renal failure. *Kidney Int* 1994;46(2):482.
214. Shekelle PG, Rich MW, Morton SC, et al. Efficacy of angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors and beta-blockers in the management of left ventricular systolic dysfunction according to race, gender, and diabetic status: a meta-analysis of major clinical trials. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2003;41:1529-38.
215. Granger CB, McMurray JJ, Yusuf S, et al. Effects of candesartan in patients with chronic heart failure and reduced left-ventricular systolic function intolerant to angiotensin-converting-enzyme inhibitors: the CHARM-Alternative trial. *Lancet* 2003;362(9386):772-776.
216. Maggioni AP, Anand I, Gottlieb SO, et al. Effects of valsartan on morbidity and mortality in patients with heart failure not receiving angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2002;40:1414-21.
217. Yusuf S, Teo K, Anderson C, et al. Effects of the angiotensin-receptor blocker telmisartan on cardiovascular events in high-risk patients intolerant to angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2008;372(9644):1174-1183.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

218. Caldeira D, David C, Sampaio C. Tolerability of angiotensin-receptor blockers in patients with intolerance to angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Am J Cardiovasc Drugs* 2012;12(4):263-77.
219. Lee VC, Rhew DC, Dylan M, et al. Meta-analysis: angiotensin-receptor blockers in chronic heart failure and high-risk acute myocardial infarction. *Ann Intern Med* 2004;141:693-704.
220. Pfeffer MA, McMurray JJ, Velazquez EJ, et al for the Valsartan in Acute Myocardial Infarction Trial Investigators. Valsartan, captopril or both in myocardial infarction complicated by heart failure, left-ventricular dysfunction or both. *N Engl J Med* 2003; 349:1893-906.
221. Bakris GL, Weir MR. Angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor associated elevations in serum creatinine. Is this a cause for concern? *Arch Intern Med* 2000;160:685-93.
222. Haymore BR, Yoon J, Mikita CP, et al. Risk of angioedema with angiotensin receptor blockers in patients with prior angioedema associated with angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors: a meta-analysis. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2008;101(5):495-499.
223. Yusuf S; Teo KK; Pogue J; Dyal L; Copland I; Schumacher H; Dagenais G; Sleight P; Anderson C. Telmisartan, ramipril, or both in patients at high risk for vascular events. *N Engl J Med* 2008; 358(15):1547-59.
224. The RESOLVD Investigators. Effects of metoprolol CR in patients with ischemic and dilated cardiomyopathy. *Circulation* 2000;101:378-84.
225. Foody JM, Farrell MH, Krumholz HM. Beta-blocker therapy in heart failure: scientific review. *JAMA* 2002;287:883-9.
226. Van Veldhuisen DJ, Cohen-Solal A, Bohm M, et al. Beta-blockade with nebivolol in elderly heart failure patients with impaired and preserved left ventricular ejection fraction: data from SENIORS (Study of Effects of Nebivolol Intervention on Outcomes and Rehospitalization in Seniors With Heart Failure). *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2009;53:2150-8.
227. McMurray JJ, Packer M, Desai AS, et al; PARADIGM-HF Investigators and Committees. Angiotensin-neprilysin inhibition versus enalapril in heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 2014;371:993-1004.
228. Okumura N, Jhund PS, Gong I, et al on behalf of the PARADIGM-HF Investigators and Committees. Effects of sacubitril/valsartan in the PARADIGM-HF Trial (Prospective Comparison of ARNI with ACEI to Determine Impact on Global Mortality and Morbidity in Heart Failure) according to background therapy. *Circ Heart Fail* 2016;9:e003212.
229. Packer M, Califf RM, Konstam MA, et al. Comparison of omapatrilat and enalapril in patients with chronic heart failure: the Omapatrilat Versus Enalapril Randomized Trial of Utility in Reducing Events (OVERTURE). *Circulation* 2002;106:920-6.
230. Kostis JB, Packer M, Black HR, et al. Omapatrilat and enalapril in patients with hypertension: the Omapatrilat Cardiovascular Treatment vs. Enalapril (OCTAVE) trial. *Am J Hypertens* 2004;17:103-11.
231. Vodovar N, Paquet C, Mebazaa A, Launay J-M, Hugon J, Cohen-Solal A. Nephrylin, cardiovascular, and Alzheimer's diseases: the therapeutic split? *Eur Heart J* 2015;36:902-5.
232. Yasojima K, McGeer EG, McGeer PL. Relationship between beta amyloid peptide generating molecules and nephrylin in Alzheimer disease and normal brain. *Brain Res* 2001;919:115-21.
233. Langenickel TH, Tsubouchi C, Ayalasomayajula S, et al. The effect of LCZ696 (sacubitril/valsartan) on amyloid- β concentrations in cerebrospinal fluid in healthy subjects. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 2016;81(5):878-90.
234. Swedberg K, Komajda M, Böhm M, et al. Ivabradine and outcomes in chronic heart failure (SHIFT): a randomised placebo-controlled study. *Lancet* 2010;376:875-85.
235. Fox K, Ford I, Steg PG, et al. Ivabradine for patients with stable coronary artery disease and left-ventricular systolic dysfunction (BEAUTIFUL): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet* 2008;372:807.
236. Uretsky BF, Young JB, Shahidi FE, et al. Randomized study assessing the effect of digoxin withdrawal in patients with mild to moderate congestive heart failure: results of the PROVED trial: PROVED Investigative Group. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 1993;22:955-62.
237. Packer MR, Gheorghade M, Young JB, et al on behalf of the RADIANCE Study: Withdrawal of digoxin from patients with chronic heart failure treated with angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors. *N Engl J Med* 1993;329:1-7.
238. The Digitalis Investigation Group. The effect of digoxin on mortality and morbidity in patients with heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 1997;336:525-33.
239. Khand AU, Rankin AC, Martin W, et al. Digoxin or carvedilol for the treatment of atrial fibrillation in patients with heart failure? (Abstract). *Heart* 2000; 83:30.
240. Farshi R, Kistner D, Sarma JS, Longmate JA, Singh BN. Ventricular rate control in chronic atrial fibrillation during daily activity and programmed exercise: a crossover open-label study of five drug regimens. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 1999;33(2):304-10.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

241. Rathore SS, Curtis JP, Weng Y, et al. Association of serum digoxin concentration and outcomes in patients with heart failure. *JAMA* 2003;289:871-8.
242. Adams KF Jr, Patterson JH, Gattis WA, et al. Relationship of serum digoxin concentration to mortality and morbidity in women in the Digitalis Investigation Group Trial: a retrospective analysis. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2005;46:497-504.
243. Lopes R, Rordorf R, De Ferrari G, et al. Digoxin and mortality in patients with atrial fibrillation. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2018;71:1063-74.
244. Cohn JN, Archibald DG, Ziesche S, et al. Effect of vasodilator therapy on mortality in chronic congestive heart failure: results of a Veterans Administration Cooperative Study. *N Engl J Med* 1986;314:1547-52.
245. Taylor AL, Ziesche S, Yancy C, et al; African-American Heart Failure Trial Investigators. Combination of isosorbide dinitrate and hydralazine in blacks with heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 2004;351(20):2049-57.
246. Thadani U. Challenges with nitrate therapy and nitrate tolerance: prevalence, prevention, and clinical relevance. *Am J Cardiovasc Drugs* 2014;14:287-301.
247. Madelaire C, Gislason G, Kristensen SL, et al. Low-dose aspirin in heart failure not complicated by atrial fibrillation: a nationwide propensity-matched study. *JACC Heart Fail* 2018;6(2):156-67.
248. Cokkinos DV, Haralabopoulos GC, Kostis JB, Toutouzas PK, HELAS Investigators. Efficacy of antithrombotic therapy in chronic heart failure: the HELAS Study. *Eur J Heart Fail* 2006;8(4):428-32.
249. Cleland JG, Findlay I, Jafri S, et al. The Warfarin/Aspirin Study in Heart failure (WASH): a randomized trial comparing antithrombotic strategies for patients with heart failure. *Am Heart J* 2004;148(1):157.
250. Lip GY, Shantsila E. Anticoagulation versus placebo for heart failure in sinus rhythm. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2014;3:CD003336.
251. Zannad F, Anker SD, Byra WM, et al; COMMANDER HF Investigators. Rivaroxaban in patients with heart failure, sinus rhythm, and coronary disease. *N Engl J Med* 2018;379(14):1332.
252. January CT, Wann LS, Alpert JS, et al. 2014 AHA/ACC/HRS Guideline for the Management of Patients with Atrial Fibrillation: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines and the Heart Rhythm Society. *Circulation* 2014;130:e199.
253. Steffel J, Verhamme P, Potpara TS, et al. The 2018 European Heart Rhythm Association Practical Guide on the Use of Non-Vitamin K Antagonist Oral Anticoagulants in Patients with Atrial Fibrillation. *Eur Heart J* 2018;39:1330-93.
254. Hart RG, Pearce LA, Aguilar MI. Meta-analysis: antithrombotic therapy to prevent stroke in patients who have nonvalvular atrial fibrillation. *Ann Intern Med* 2007;146(12):857-67.
255. Dentali F, Riva N, Crowther M, Turpie AG, Lip GY, Ageno W. Efficacy and safety of the novel oral anticoagulants in atrial fibrillation: a systematic review and meta-analysis of the literature. *Circulation* 2012;126(20):2381-91.
256. Adam SS, McDuffie JR, Ortel TL, Williams JW Jr. Comparative effectiveness of warfarin and new oral anticoagulants for the management of atrial fibrillation and venous thromboembolism: a systematic review. *Ann Intern Med* 2012;157(11):796-807.
257. Ntaios G, Papavasileiou V, Diener HC, Makaritsis K, Michel P. Nonvitamin-K-antagonist oral anticoagulants in patients with atrial fibrillation and previous stroke or transient ischemic attack: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. *Stroke* 2012;43(12):3298-304.
258. Swedberg K, Olsson LG, Charlesworth A, et al. Prognostic relevance of atrial fibrillation in patients with chronic heart failure on long-term treatment with beta-blockers: results from COMET. *Eur Heart J* 2005;26:1303-8.
259. Smit MD, Moes ML, Maass AH, et al. The importance of whether atrial fibrillation or heart failure develops first. *Eur J Heart Fail* 2012;14:1030-40.
260. Olsson LG, Swedberg K, Ducharme A, et al. Atrial fibrillation and risk of clinical events in chronic heart failure with and without left ventricular systolic dysfunction: results from the Candesartan in Heart Failure-Assessment of Reduction in Mortality and Morbidity (CHARM) program. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2006;47:1997-2004.
261. Roy D, Talajic M, Nattel S, et al. Rhythm control versus rate control for atrial fibrillation and heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 2008;358:2667-77.
262. Hagens VE, Crijns HJGM, Van Veldhuisen DJ, et al. Rate control versus rhythm control for patients with persistent atrial fibrillation with mild to moderate heart failure: results from the RAte Control versus Electrical cardioversion (RACE) study. *Am Heart J* 2005;149:1106-11.
263. Van Gelder IC, Hagens VE, Bosker HA, et al. A comparison of rate control and rhythm control in patients with recurrent persistent atrial fibrillation. *N Engl J Med* 2002;347:1834-40.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

264. Van Gelder IC, Wyse DG, Chandler ML, et al; RACE and AFFIRM Investigators. Does intensity of rate-control influence outcome in atrial fibrillation? An analysis of pooled data from the RACE and AFFIRM studies. *Europace* 2006;8:935-42.
265. Li SJ, Sartipy U, Lund LH, et al. Prognostic significance of resting heart rate and use of b-blockers in atrial fibrillation and sinus rhythm in patients with heart failure and reduced ejection fraction: findings from the Swedish Heart Failure Registry. *Circ Heart Fail* 2015;8:871-9.
266. Mareev Y, Cleland JGF. Should b-blockers be used in patients with heart failure and atrial fibrillation? *Clin Ther* 2015;37:2215-24.
267. Van Gelder IC, Groenveld HF, Crijns HJ, et al. Lenient versus strict rate control in patients with atrial fibrillation. *N Engl J Med* 2010;362:1363-73.
268. Kirchhof K, Benussi S, Kotecha D, et al. 2016 ESC Guidelines for the Management of Atrial Fibrillation developed in collaboration with EACTS. *Eur Heart J* 2016;37(38): 2893-962.
269. Khand AU, Rankin AC, Kaye GC, et al. Systematic review of the management of atrial fibrillation in patients with heart failure. *Eur Heart J* 2000; 21:614-32.
270. Olshansky B, Rosenfeld CE, Warner AL, et al. The Atrial Fibrillation Follow Up Investigation of Rhythm Management (AFFIRM) Study; approach to control rate in atrial fibrillation. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2004;43:1201-8.
271. Kotecha D, Holmes J, Krum H, et al for the Beta-Blockers in Heart Failure Collaborative Group. Efficacy of β blockers in patients with heart failure plus atrial fibrillation: an individual-patient data meta-analysis. *Lancet* 2014;384:2235-43.
272. Hofmann R, Steinwender C, Kammler J, Kypka A, Leisch F. Effects of a high dose intravenous bolus amiodarone in patients with atrial fibrillation and a rapid ventricular rate. *Int J Cardiol* 2006;110:27-32.
273. Hofmann R, Wimmer G, Leisch F. Intravenous amiodarone bolus immediately controls heart rate in patients with atrial fibrillation accompanied by severe congestive heart failure. *Heart* 2000;84:635.
274. Marrouche NF, Brachmann J, Andresen D, et al. for the CASTLE-AF Investigators. Catheter ablation for atrial fibrillation with heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 2018; 378:417-27.
275. Hayashi M, Shimizu W, Albert CM. The spectrum of epidemiology underlying sudden cardiac death. *Circ Res* 2015;116:1887-906.
276. Wellens HJJ, Schwartz PJ, Lindemans FW, et al. Risk stratification for sudden cardiac death: current status and challenges for the future. *Eur Heart J* 2014; 35(25):1642-51.
277. Luu M, Stevenson WG, Stevenson LW, et al. Diverse mechanisms of unexpected cardiac arrest in advanced heart failure. *Circulation* 1989; 80:1675-80.
278. Wang Y, Scheinman MM, Chien WW, et al. Patients with supraventricular tachycardia presenting with aborted sudden death. Incidence, mechanism and long-term follow-up. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 1991;18:1711-19.
279. Nutall SL, Toescu V, Kendall MJ. Beta blockers have a key role in reducing morbidity and mortality after infarction. *BMJ* 2000;320:581.
280. The CIBIS II Investigators. The Cardiac Insufficiency Bisoprolol Study II (CIBIS-II): a randomised trial. *Lancet* 1999;353(9146):90-13.
281. Al-Gobari M, El Khatib C, Pillon F, Gueyffier F. β -Blockers for the prevention of sudden cardiac death in heart failure patients: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *BMC Cardiovasc Disord* 2013;13:52.
282. Bapojce SR, Bahia A, Hokanson JE, et al. Effects of mineralocorticoid receptor antagonists on the risk of sudden cardiac death in patients with left ventricular systolic dysfunction: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Circ Heart Fail* 2013;6:166-173.
283. Domanski MJ, Exner DV, Borkowf CB, Geller NL, Rosenberg Y, Pfeffer MA. Effect of angiotensin converting enzyme inhibition on sudden cardiac death in patients following acute myocardial infarction: a meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 1999;33:598-604.
284. Solomon SD, Wang D, Finn P, et al. Effect of candesartan on cause-specific mortality in heart failure patients: the Candesartan in Heart failure Assessment of Reduction in Mortality and morbidity (CHARM) program. *Circulation* 2004;110:2180-3.
285. Teo KK, Mitchell LB, Pogue J, Bosch J, Dagenais G, Yusuf S on behalf of the HOPE Investigators. Effect of ramipril in reducing sudden deaths and nonfatal cardiac arrests in high-risk individuals without heart failure or left ventricular dysfunction. *Circulation* 2004;110:1413-7.
286. Naccarella F, Naccarelli GV, Maranga SS, et al. Do ACE inhibitors or angiotensin II antagonists reduce total mortality and arrhythmic mortality? A critical review of controlled clinical trials. *Curr Opin Cardiol* 2002;17:6-18.
287. Desai AS, McMurray JJ, Packer M, et al. Effect of the angiotensin-receptor-neprilysin inhibitor LCZ696 compared with enalapril on mode of death in heart failure patients. *Eur Heart J* 2015;36:1990-7.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

288. Kazem Rahimi K, Majoni W, Merhi A, Emberson J. Effect of statins on ventricular tachyarrhythmia, cardiac arrest, and sudden cardiac death: a meta-analysis of published and unpublished evidence from randomized trials. *Eur Heart J* 2012;33(13):1571-81.
289. Wever EF, Hauer RN, van Capelle FL, et al. Randomized study of implantable defibrillator as first-choice therapy versus conventional strategy in postinfarct sudden death survivors. *Circulation* 1995;91:2195-203.
290. Siebels J, Kuck KH. Implantable cardioverter defibrillator compared with antiarrhythmic drug treatment in cardiac arrest survivors (the Cardiac Arrest Study Hamburg). *Am Heart J* 1994;127:1139-44.
291. The Antiarrhythmics vs Implantable Defibrillator (AVID) Investigators. A comparison of antiarrhythmic drug therapy with implantable defibrillators in patients resuscitated from near fatal ventricular arrhythmias. *N Engl J Med* 1997;337:1576-83.
292. Connolly SJ, Hallstrom AP, Cappato R, et al. Meta-analysis of the implantable cardioverter defibrillator secondary prevention trials. AVID, CASH and CIDS Studies. *Antiarrhythmics vs Implantable Defibrillator Study. Cardiac Arrest Study Hamburg. Canadian Implantable Defibrillator Study. Eur Heart J* 2000;21(24):2071-8.
293. Kuck KH, Cappato R, Siebels J, Ruppel R. Randomized comparison of antiarrhythmic drug therapy with implantable defibrillators in patients resuscitated from cardiac arrest: the Cardiac Arrest Study Hamburg (CASH). *Circulation* 2000;102:748-54.
294. Steinberg JS, Martins J, Sadanandan S, et al; AVID Investigators. Antiarrhythmic drug use in the implantable defibrillator arm of the Antiarrhythmics Versus Implantable Defibrillators (AVID) Study. *Am Heart J* 2001;142(3):520.
295. Vardas PE, Auricchio A, Blanc JJ, et al. Guidelines for cardiac pacing and cardiac resynchronization therapy: The Task Force for Cardiac Pacing and Cardiac Resynchronization Therapy of the European Society of Cardiology. Developed in Collaboration with the European Heart Rhythm Association. *Eur Heart J* 2007;28 (18):2256-95.
296. Elkayam U, Amin J, Mehra A, et al. A prospective, randomized, double-blind, crossover study to compare the efficacy and safety of chronic nifedipine therapy with that of isosorbide dinitrate and their combination in the treatment of chronic congestive heart failure. *Circulation* 1990;82:1954-61.
297. Littler WA, Sheridan DJ. Placebo controlled trial of felodipine in patients with mild to moderate heart failure. UK Study Group. *Br Heart J* 1995;73:428-33.
298. Goldstein RE, Boccuzzi SJ, Cruess D, Nattel S. Diltiazem increases late-onset congestive heart failure in postinfarction patients with early reduction in ejection fraction. The Adverse Experience Committee; and the Multicenter Diltiazem Postinfarction Research Group. *Circulation* 1991;83:52-60.
299. [No authors listed]. Effect of verapamil on mortality and major events after acute myocardial infarction (the Danish Verapamil Infarction Trial II-DAVIT II). *Am J Cardiol* 1990;66:779-85.
300. Packer M, O'Connor CM, Ghali JK, et al. Effect of amlodipine on morbidity and mortality in severe chronic heart failure. Prospective Randomized Amlodipine Survival Evaluation Study Group. *N Engl J Med* 1996;335:1107-14.
301. Packer M, Carson P, Elkayam U, et al. Effect of amlodipine on the survival of patients with severe chronic heart failure due to a nonischemic cardiomyopathy: results of the PRAISE-2 study (Prospective Randomized Amlodipine Survival Evaluation 2). *JACC Heart Fail* 2013;1:308-14.
302. Cohn JN, Ziesche S, Smith R et al. Effect of the calcium antagonist felodipine as supplementary vasodilator therapy in patients with chronic heart failure treated with enalapril. *Circulation* 1997;96:856-63.
303. Abraham WT, Fisher WG, Smith AL, et al. Cardiac resynchronization in chronic heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 2002;346:1845-53.
304. Bristow MR, Saxon LA, Boehmer J, et al. Cardiac-resynchronization therapy with or without an implantable defibrillator in advanced chronic heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 2004;350:2140-50.
305. Cleland JG, Daubert JC, Erdmann E, et al. The effect of cardiac resynchronization on morbidity and mortality in heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 2005;352:1539-49.
306. Jarcho JA. Biventricular pacing. *N Engl J Med* 2006;355:288-94.
307. Patwala AY, Wright DJ. Device based treatment of heart failure. *Postgrad Med J* 2005;81:286-91.
308. Moss AJ, Hall WJ, Cannom DS, et al. Cardiac-resynchronization therapy for the prevention of heart-failure events. *N Engl J Med* 2009;361:1329-38.
309. Abraham WT, Young JB, Leon AR, et al. Effects of cardiac resynchronization on disease progression in patients with left ventricular systolic dysfunction, an indication for an implantable cardioverter-defibrillator, and mildly symptomatic chronic heart failure. *Circulation* 2004;110:2864-8.
310. Linde C, Abraham WT, Gold MR, St John Sutton M, Ghio S, Daubert C. Randomized trial of cardiac resynchronization in mildly symptomatic heart failure patients and in asymptomatic patients with left ventricular dysfunction and previous heart failure symptoms. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2008;52:1834-43.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

311. Tang A, Wells G, Talajic M, et al. Cardiac-resynchronization therapy for mild-to-moderate heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 2010;363:2385-95.
312. Ruschitzka F, Abraham WT, Singh JP, et al for the EchoCRT Study Group. Cardiac-resynchronization therapy in heart failure with a narrow QRS complex. *N Engl J Med* 2013;369:1395-405.
313. Beshai JF, Grimm RA, Nagueh SF, et al. Cardiac-resynchronization therapy in heart failure with narrow QRS complexes. *N Engl J Med* 2007;357(24):2461-71.
314. Donahue T, Niazi I, Leon A, et al. One year follow-up of CRT in narrow QRS patients with mechanical dyssynchrony. *Circulation* 2008;118:949.
315. Gasparini M, Auricchio A, Metra M, et al. Long-term survival in patients undergoing cardiac resynchronization therapy: the importance of performing atrio-ventricular junction ablation in patients with permanent atrial fibrillation. *Eur Heart J* 2008;29:1644-52.
316. Khadjooi K, Foley PW, Chail S, et al. Long-term effects of cardiac resynchronization therapy in patients with atrial fibrillation. *Heart* 2008;94:879-83.
317. Brignole M, Pokushalov E, Pentimalli F, et al; APAF-CRT Investigators. A randomized controlled trial of atrioventricular junction ablation and cardiac resynchronization therapy in patients with permanent atrial fibrillation and narrow QRS. *Eur Heart J* 2018;39:3999-4008.
318. Moss AJ, Hall WJ, Cannom DS, et al for the Multicenter Automatic Defibrillator Implantation Trial (MADIT) Investigators. Improved survival with an implanted defibrillator in patients with coronary disease at high risk for ventricular arrhythmia. *N Engl J Med* 1996;335:1933-40.
319. Buxton AE, Lee KL, Fisher JD, et al. A randomized study of the prevention of sudden death in patients with coronary artery disease. *N Engl J Med* 1999; 341:1882-90.
320. Moss AJ, Zareba W, Hall WJ, et al. Prophylactic implantation of a defibrillator in patients with myocardial infarction and reduced ejection fraction. *N Engl J Med* 2002; 346:877-83.
321. Bardy GH, Lee KL, Mark DB, et al. Amiodarone or an implantable cardioverter-defibrillator for congestive heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 2005;352:225-37.
322. Lars Køber, Thune JJ, Nielsen JC, et al for the DANISH Investigators. Defibrillator implantation in patients with nonischemic systolic heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 2016;375:1221-30.
323. Kadish A, Dyer A, Daubert JP, et al for the Defibrillators in Non-Ischemic Cardiomyopathy Treatment Evaluation (DEFINITE) Investigators. Prophylactic defibrillator implantation in patients with nonischemic dilated cardiomyopathy. *N Engl J Med* 2004;350:2151-8.
324. Desai AS, Fang JC, Maisel WH, Baughman KL. Implantable defibrillators for the prevention of mortality in patients with nonischemic cardiomyopathy: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *JAMA* 2004;292:2874-9.
325. Velazquez EJ, Lee KL, Jones RH, et al for the STICHES Investigators. Coronary artery bypass surgery in patients with ischemic cardiomyopathy. *N Engl J Med* 2016;374:1511-20.
326. Otto CM. Timing of surgery in mitral regurgitation. *Heart* 2003;89(1):100-5.
327. Fattouch K, Guccione F, Sampognaro R, et al. Efficacy of adding mitral valve restrictive annuloplasty to coronary artery bypass grafting in patients with moderate ischemic mitral valve regurgitation: a randomized trial. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2009;138:278-85.
328. Chan KMJ, Punjabi PP, Flather M, et al for the RIME Investigators. Coronary artery bypass surgery with or without mitral valve annuloplasty in moderate functional ischemic mitral regurgitation. Final results of the Randomized Ischemic Mitral Evaluation (RIME) Trial. *Circulation* 2012;126:2502-10.
329. Stone GW, Lindenfeld J, Abraham WT, et al for the COAPT Investigators. Transcatheter mitral-valve repair in patients with heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 2018 379:2307-18.
330. Obadia J-F, Messika-Zeitoun D, Leurent G, et al for the MITRA-FR Investigators. Percutaneous repair or medical treatment for secondary mitral regurgitation. *N Engl J Med* 2018;379:2297-306.
331. Castelvécchio S, Menicanti L, Di Donato M. Surgical ventricular restoration to reverse left ventricular remodeling. *Curr Cardiol Rev* 2010;6:15-23.
332. Jones RH, Velazquez EJ, Michler RE, Sopko G, Oh JK, O'Connor CM, et al for the STICH Hypothesis 2 Investigators. Coronary bypass surgery with or without surgical ventricular reconstruction. *N Engl J Med* 2009;360:1705-17.
333. Stewart GC, Givertz MM. Mechanical circulatory support for advanced heart failure. Patients and technology in evolution. *Circulation* 2012;125:1304-15.
334. Rose EA, Gelijns AC, Moskowitz AJ et al. Long term mechanical left ventricular assistance for end stage heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 2001;345:1435-43.
335. Health Quality Ontario. Left ventricular assist devices: an evidence-based analysis. *Ont Health Technol Assess Ser* 2004;4(3):1-69.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

336. Davies M, Hobbs F, Davis R, et al. Burden of systolic and diastolic ventricular dysfunction in the community: appreciating the scope of the heart failure epidemic. *Lancet* 2001;358(9280):439
337. Redfield MM, Jacobsen SJ, Burnett JC Jr, Mahoney DW, Bailey KR, Rodeheffer RJ. Prevalence of left-ventricular systolic dysfunction and heart failure in the Echocardiographic Heart of England Screening study: a population based study. *Lancet* 2001;358(9280):439-44.
338. Jong P, Yusuf S, Rousseau MF, et al. Effect on enalapril on 12-year survival and life expectancy in patients with left ventricular systolic dysfunction: a follow-up study. *Lancet* 2003;361:1843-8.
339. The SOLVD Investigators. Effect of enalapril on survival in patients with reduced left ventricular ejection fractions and congestive heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 1991;325(5):293-302.
340. Wan S, Vogel MW, Chen HH. Pre-clinical diastolic dysfunction. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2014;63:407-16.
341. Galasko GI, Barnes SC, Collinson P, Lahiri A, Senior R. What is the most cost-effective strategy to screen for left ventricular systolic dysfunction: natriuretic peptides, the electrocardiogram, hand-held echocardiography, traditional echocardiography, or their combination? *Eur Heart J* 2006;27(2):193.
342. Nielsen OW, McDonagh TA, Robb SD, Dargie HJ. Retrospective analysis of the cost-effectiveness of using plasma brain natriuretic peptide in screening for left ventricular systolic dysfunction in the general population. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2003;41(1):113.
343. Ledwidge M, Gallagher J, Conlon C, et al. Natriuretic peptide-based screening and collaborative care for heart failure: the STOP-HF randomized trial. *JAMA* 2013 310(1):66-74.
344. Carrubba S, Todaro MC, Zito C, et al. Asymptomatic left ventricular dysfunction and metabolic syndrome: Results from an Italian Multicenter Study. *J Cardiovasc Echo* 2013;23:96-101.
345. Pfeffer MA, Braunwald E, Moyé LA, et al. Effect of captopril on mortality and morbidity in patients with left ventricular dysfunction after myocardial infarction. Results of the survival and ventricular enlargement trial. The SAVE Investigators. *N Engl J Med* 1992;327(10):669.
346. Køber L, Torp-Pedersen C, Carlsen JE, et al. A clinical trial of the angiotensin-converting-enzyme inhibitor trandolapril in patients with left ventricular dysfunction after myocardial infarction. Trandolapril Cardiac Evaluation (TRACE) Study Group. *N Engl J Med* 1995;333(25):1670.
347. Vantrimpont P, Rouleau JL, Wunetal for the SAVE Investigators. Additive beneficial effects of β -blockers to angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors in the Survival and Ventricular Enlargement (SAVE) study. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 1997;29:229-36.
348. O'Keefe JH, Abuissa H, Pitt B. Eplerenone improves prognosis in postmyocardial infarction diabetic patients with heart failure: results from EPHEsus. *Diabetes Obes Metab* 2008;10(6):492-7.
349. Chen MD, Dong SS, Cai NY, et al. Efficacy and safety of mineralocorticoid receptor antagonists for patients with heart failure and diabetes mellitus: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *BMC Cardiovasc Disord* 2016;16:28.
350. Montalescot G, Pitt B, Lopez de Sa E, et al. Early eplerenone treatment in patients with acute ST-elevation myocardial infarction without heart failure: The Randomized Double-Blind Reminder Study. *Eur Heart J* 2014;35:2295-302.
351. The Multicenter Diltiazem Post infarction Trial Research Group. The effect of diltiazem on mortality and reinfarction after myocardial infarction. *N Engl J Med* 1988;319:385-92.
352. Owan TE, Hodge DO, Herges RM, et al. Trends in prevalence and outcome of heart failure with preserved ejection fraction. *N Engl J Med* 2006;355:251-9.
353. Paulus WJ, Tschope C, Sanderson JE, et al. How to diagnose diastolic heart failure: a consensus statement on the diagnosis of heart failure with normal left ventricular ejection fraction by the Heart Failure and Echocardiography Associations of the European Society of Cardiology. *Eur Heart J* 2007;28(20):2539-50.
354. Yancy CW, Jessup M, Bozkurt B, et al. 2013 ACCF/AHA guideline for the management of heart failure: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/ American heart association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2013;62(16):e147-239.
355. Bhuiyan T, Maurer MS. Heart failure with preserved ejection fraction: persistent diagnosis, therapeutic enigma. *Curr Cardiovasc Risk Rep* 2011;5:440-9.
356. Maréchaux S, Six-Carpentier MM, Bouabdallaoui N, et al. Prognostic importance of comorbidities in heart failure with preserved left ventricular ejection fraction. *Heart Vessels* 2011;26(3):313-20.
357. Sartipy U, Dahstrom U, Fu M, et al. Atrial fibrillation in heart failure with preserved, mid range and reduced ejection fraction. *JACC Heart Failure* 2017;5:567-74.
358. Piller LB, Baraniuk S, Simpson LM, et al. Long-term follow-up of participants with heart failure in the Antihypertensive and Lipid-Lowering Treatment to Prevent Heart Attack Trial (ALLHAT). *Circulation* 2011;124:1811-8.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

359. Cairns JA, Connolly S, McMurry S, et al. Canadian Cardiovascular Society Atrial Fibrillation Guidelines 2010: Prevention of stroke and systemic thromboembolism in atrial fibrillation and flutter. *Can J Cardiol* 2011;27:74-90.
360. Camm AJ, Kirchhof P, Lip GY, et al. Guidelines for the management of atrial fibrillation: the Task Force for the Management of Atrial Fibrillation of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC). *Eur Heart J* 2010;31:2369-429.
361. Hernandez AF, Hammill BG, O'Connor CM, et al. Clinical effectiveness of beta-blockers in heart failure: findings from the OPTIMIZE-HF (Organized Program to Initiate Lifesaving Treatment in Hospitalized Patients with Heart Failure) Registry. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2009;53:184-92.
362. Setar JF, Zaret BL, Schulman DS, et al. Usefulness of verapamil for congestive heart failure associated with abnormal left ventricular diastolic filling and normal left ventricular systolic performance. *Am J Cardiol* 1990;66:981-6.
363. Bonow RO, Dilisizian V, Rosing DR, et al. Verapamil-induced improvement in left ventricular diastolic filling and increased exercise tolerance in patients with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy: short and long term effects. *Circulation* 1985;72:853-64.
364. Yusuf S, Pfeffer MA, Swedberg K, et al. Effects of candesartan in patients with CHF and preserved left-ventricular ejection fraction: the CHARM – Preserved Trial. *Lancet* 2003;362:777-81.
365. Massie BM, Carson PE, McMurray JJ, et al. Irbesartan in patients with heart failure and preserved ejection fraction. *N Engl J Med* 2008;359:2456-67.
366. Yip GW, Wang M, Wang T, et al. The Hong Kong Diastolic Heart Failure Study: a randomised controlled trial of diuretics, irbesartan and ramipril on quality of life, exercise capacity, left ventricular global and regional function in heart failure with a normal ejection fraction. *Heart* 2008;94(5):573-80.
367. Cleland JG, Tendera M, Adamus J, Freemantle N, Polonski L, Taylor J, PEP-CHF Investigators. The Perindopril in Elderly People with Chronic Heart Failure (PEP-CHF) study. *Eur Heart J* 2006;27(19):2338-45.
368. Pitt B, Pfeffer MA, Assmann SF, et al. TOPCAT Investigators. Spironolactone for heart failure with preserved ejection fraction. *N Engl J Med* 2014;370:1383-92.
369. Fukuta H, Goto T, Wakami K, et al. Effects of drug and exercise intervention on functional capacity and quality of life in heart failure with preserved ejection fraction: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Eur J Prev Cardiol* 2016;23:78-85.
370. Adamson PB, Abraham WT, Bourge RC, et al. Wireless pulmonary artery pressure monitoring guides management to reduce decompensation in heart failure with preserved ejection fraction. *Circ Heart Fail* 2014;7:935-44.
371. Packer M. Heart failure: the most important, preventable, and treatable cardiovascular complication of type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Care* 2018;41:11-13.
372. Stratton IM, Adler AI, Neil HA, et al. Association of glycaemia with macrovascular and microvascular complications of type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 35): prospective observational study. *BMJ* 2000;321:405-12.
373. Metra M, Zacà V, Parati G, et al. Cardiovascular and noncardiovascular comorbidities in patients with chronic heart failure. *J Cardiovasc Med (Hagerstown)* 2011;12:76-84.
374. MacDonald MR, Petrie MC, Varyani F, et al. Impact of diabetes on outcomes in patients with low and preserved ejection fraction heart failure: an analysis of the Candesartan in Heart failure: Assessment of Reduction in Mortality and morbidity (CHARM) programme. *Eur Heart J* 2008;29:1377-85.
375. Sandesara PB, O'Neal WT, Kelli HM, et al. The prognostic significance of diabetes and microvascular complications in patients with heart failure with preserved ejection fraction. *Diabetes Care* 2018;41:150-15.
376. Amato L, Paolisso G, Cacciatore F, et al. Congestive heart failure predicts the development of non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus in the elderly. The Osservatorio Geriatrico Regione Campania Group. *Diabetes Metab* 1997;23:213-8.
377. Andersson C, Norgaard ML, Hansen PR, et al. Heart failure severity, as determined by loop diuretic dosages, predicts the risk of developing diabetes after myocardial infarction: a nationwide cohort study. *Eur J Heart Fail* 2010;12:1333-8.
378. Kannel WB, Hjortland M, Castelli WP. Role of diabetes in congestive heart failure: the Framingham study. *Am J Cardiol* 1974;34:29-34.
379. Matsushita K, Blecker S, Pazin-Filho A, et al. The association of hemoglobin a1c with incident heart failure among people without diabetes: the atherosclerosis risk in communities study. *Diabetes* 2010;59:2020-6.
380. He J, Ogden LG, Bazzano LA, et al. Risk factors for congestive heart failure in US men and women: NHANES I epidemiologic follow-up study. *Arch Intern Med* 2001;161:996-1002.
381. Rawshani A, Rawshani A, Franzén S, et al. Risk factors, mortality, and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med* 2018; 379:633-44.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

382. McMurray JJ, Gerstein HC, Holman RR, Pfeffer MA. Heart failure: a cardiovascular outcome in diabetes that can no longer be ignored. *Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol* 2014;2:843-51.
383. Krumholz HM, Chen YT, Wang Y, et al. Predictors of readmission among elderly survivors of admission with heart failure. *Am Heart J* 2000;139:72-7.
384. Shindler DM, Kostis JB, Yusuf S, et al. Diabetes mellitus, a predictor of morbidity and mortality in the Studies of Left Ventricular Dysfunction (SOLVD) Trials and Registry. *Am J Cardiol* 1996;77:1017-20.
385. Kishimoto I, Makino H, Ohata Y, et al. Hemoglobin A1c predicts heart failure hospitalization independent of baseline cardiac function or B-type natriuretic peptide level. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract* 2014;104(2):257-65.
386. Wang Y, Negishi T, Negishi K, Marwick TH. Prediction of heart failure in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus - a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract* 2015;108:55-66.
387. Rutter MK, Parise H, Benjamin EJ, et al. Impact of glucose intolerance and insulin resistance on cardiac structure and function: sex-related differences in the Framingham Heart Study. *Circulation* 2003;107:448-54.
388. Hartog JW, Voors AA, Schalkwijk CG, et al. Clinical and prognostic value of advanced glycation end-products in chronic heart failure. *Eur Heart J* 2007;28:2879-85.
389. Simm A, Wagner J, Gursinsky T, et al. Advanced glycation endproducts: a biomarker for age as an outcome predictor after cardiac surgery? *Exp Gerontol* 2007;42:668-75.
390. Tousoulis D, Oikonomou E, Siasos G, Stefanadis C. Diabetes mellitus and heart failure. *Eur Cardiol* 2014;9(1):37-42.
391. Haas SJ, Vos T, Gilbert RE, Krum H. Are beta blockers as efficacious in patients with diabetes mellitus as in patients without diabetes mellitus who have chronic heart failure? A meta-analysis of large scale clinical trials. *Am Heart J* 2003;146:84853.
392. Boussageon R, Bejan-Angoulvant T, Saadatian-Elahi M, et al. Effect of intensive glucose lowering treatment on all cause mortality, cardiovascular death, and microvascular events in type 2 diabetes: meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. *BMJ* 2011;343:d4169.
393. Elder DH, Singh JS, Levin D, et al. Mean HbA1c and mortality in diabetic individuals with heart failure: a population cohort study. *Eur J Heart Fail* 2016;18:94-102.
394. ACCORD Study Group, Gerstein HC, Miller ME, Genuth S, et al. Long-term effects of intensive glucose lowering on cardiovascular outcomes. *N Engl J Med* 2011;364:818-28.
395. Ukena C, Dobre D, Mahfoud F, et al. Hypo- and hyperglycemia predict outcome in patients with left ventricular dysfunction after acute myocardial infarction: data from EPHEsus. *J Card Fail* 2012;18:439-45.
396. Jorsal A, Kistorp C, Holmager P, et al. Effect of liraglutide, a glucagon-like peptide-1 analogue, on left ventricular function in stable chronic heart failure patients with and without diabetes (LIVE) - a multicentre, double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled trial. *Eur J Heart Fail* 2017;19(1):69-77.
397. Scheen AJ. GLP-1 receptor agonists and heart failure in diabetes. *Diabetes Metab.* 2017 Apr;43 Suppl 1:2S13-2S19
398. Scirica BM, Bhatt DL, Braunwald E, et al. SAVOR-TIMI 53 Steering Committee and Investigators. Saxagliptin and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. *N Engl J Med* 2013;369:1317-26.
399. Green JB, Bethel MA, Armstrong PW, et al. TECOS Study Group. Effect of sitagliptin on cardiovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med* 2015;373:232-42.
400. Home PD, Pocock SJ, Beck-Nielsen H, et al; RECORD Study Group. Rosiglitazone evaluated for cardiovascular outcomes - an interim analysis. *N Engl J Med* 2007;357:28-38.
401. Home PD, Pocock SJ, Beck-Nielsen H, et al; RECORD Study Team. Rosiglitazone evaluated for cardiovascular outcomes in oral agent combination therapy for type 2 diabetes (RECORD): a multicentre, randomised, open-label trial. *Lancet* 2009;373:2125-35.
402. Regitz-Zagrosek V, Roos-Hesselink JW, Bauersachs J, et al. 2018 ESC guidelines for the management of cardiovascular diseases during pregnancy. The Task Force for the Management of Cardiovascular Diseases during Pregnancy of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC). *Eur Heart J* 2018;39:3165-241.
403. Weiss BM, Hess OM. Pulmonary vascular disease and pregnancy; current controversies, management strategies and perspective. *Eur Heart J* 2000;21:104-15.
404. van Spaendonck-Zwarts KY, Posafalvi A, van den Berg MP, et al. Titin gene mutations are common in families with both peripartum cardiomyopathy and dilated cardiomyopathy. *Eur Heart J* 2014;35:2165-73.
405. van Spaendonck-Zwarts KY, van Tintelen JP, van Veldhuisen DJ, et al. Peripartum cardiomyopathy as a part of familial dilated cardiomyopathy. *Circulation* 2010;121:2169-75.
406. van Tintelen JP, Pieper PG, van Spaendonck-Zwarts KY, van den Berg MP. Pregnancy, cardiomyopathies and genetics. *Cardiovasc Res* 2014;101:571-8.
407. Silversides CK, Grewal J, Mason J, et al. Pregnancy outcomes in women with heart disease. The CARPREG II Study. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2018;71:2419-30.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

408. Hilfiker-Kleiner D, Sliwa K. Pathophysiology and epidemiology of peripartum cardiomyopathy. *Nat Rev Cardiol* 2014;11:364-70.
409. Sliwa K, Fett J, Elkayam U. Peripartum cardiomyopathy. *Lancet* 2006;368:687-93.
410. Sliwa K, Hilfiker-Kleiner D, Petrie MC, et al. Current state of knowledge on aetiology, diagnosis, management, and therapy of peripartum cardiomyopathy: A Position Statement from the Heart Failure Association of the European Society of Cardiology Working Group on Peripartum Cardiomyopathy. *Eur J Heart Fail* 2010;12:767-78.
411. Wan Ahmad WA, Khanom M, Yaakob ZH. Heart failure in pregnancy: an overview. *Int J Clin Pract* 2011;65(8):848-51.
412. Siu SC, Sermer M, Colman JM, et al. Prospective multicenter study of pregnancy outcomes in women with heart disease. *Circulation* 2001;104(5):515-21.
413. Ministry of Health Malaysia (Division of Family Health Division). Training Manual on Hypertensives Disorders in Pregnancy, 2014.
414. New York State Department of Health. Hypertensive disorders in pregnancy. Guideline Summary, May 2013.
415. [No authors listed]. Nifedipine versus expectant management in mild to moderate hypertension in pregnancy. Gruppo di Studio ipertensione in Gravidanza. *Br J Obstet Gynaecol* 1998;105:718-22.
416. Magee LA, Schick B, Donnenfeld AE, et al. The safety of calcium channel blockers in human pregnancy: a prospective multicenter cohort study. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1996;174:3:823-8.
417. Weber-Schoendorfer C, Hannemann D, Meister R, et al. The safety of calcium channel blockers during pregnancy: a prospective, multicenter, observational study. *Reprod Toxicol* 2008;26(1):24-30.
418. Cauldwell M, Steer PJ, Swan L, Uebing A, Gatzoulis MA, Johnson MR. The management of the third stage of labour in women with heart disease. *Heart* 2017;103:945-51.
419. Khairy P, Ionescu-Iltu R, MacKie AS, Abrahamowicz M, Pilote L, Marelli AJ. Changing mortality in congenital heart disease. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2010;56(14):1149-57.
420. Oechslin EN, Harrison DA, Connelly MS, Webb GD, Siu SC. Mode of death in adults with congenital heart disease. *Am J of Cardiol* 2000;86(10):1111-6.
421. Verheugt CL, Uiterwaal CSPM, van der Velde ET, et al. Mortality in adult congenital heart disease. *Eur Heart J* 2010; 31(10):1220-9.
422. Diller GP, Kempny A, Alonso-Gonzalez R, et al. Survival prospects and circumstances of death in contemporary adult congenital heart disease patients under follow-up at a large tertiary centre. *Circulation* 2015;132(22):2118-25.
423. Sabanayagam A, Cavus O, Williams J, Bradley E. Management of heart failure in adult congenital heart disease. *Heart Failure Clin* 2018;14:569-77.
424. Galiè N, Humbert M, Vachiery JL, et al; ESC Scientific Document Group. 2015 ESC/ERS guidelines for the diagnosis and treatment of pulmonary hypertension: The Joint Task Force for the Diagnosis and Treatment of Pulmonary Hypertension of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC) and the European Respiratory Society (ERS): Endorsed by: Association for European Paediatric and Congenital Cardiology (AEPC), International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation (ISHLT). *Eur Heart J* 2016;37(1):67-119.
425. Stout KK, Daniels CJ, Abulhosn JA, et al. 2018 AHA/ACC guideline for the management of adults with congenital heart disease. A Report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines. *Circulation* 2019;139:e698-e800.
426. Oster M, Bhatt AB, Zaragoza-Macias E, Dendukuri N, Marelli A. Interventional therapy versus medical therapy for secundum atrial septal defect: A systematic review (Part 2). for the 2018 AHA/ACC guideline for the management of adults with congenital heart disease: A report of the American College of Cardiology /American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2019;73(12):1579-95.
427. Brida M, Diller GP, Nashat H, et al. Pharmacological therapy in adult congenital heart disease: growing, yet limited evidence. *Eur Heart J* 2018;0:1-10.
428. Zaragoza-Macias E, Zaidi AN, Dendukuri N, Marelli A. Medical therapy for systemic right ventricles: a systematic review (Part 1) for the 2018 AHA/ACC guideline for the management of adults with congenital heart disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines. *Circulation* 2019;139:e801-13.
429. Stout KK, Daniels CJ, Abulhosn JA, et al. 2018 AHA/ACC guideline for the management of adults with congenital heart disease. A report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2019;73(12):e81-192.
430. Egbe AC, Connolly HM, Khan AR, et al. Outcomes in adult Fontan patients with atrial tachyarrhythmias. *Am Heart J* 2017;186:12-20.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

431. Khairy P, Van Hare GF, Balaji S, et al. PACES/HRS expert consensus statement on the recognition and management of arrhythmias in adult congenital heart disease: developed in partnership between the Pediatric and Congenital Electrophysiology Society (PACES) and the Heart Rhythm Society (HRS). Endorsed by the governing bodies of PACES, HRS, the American College of Cardiology (ACC), the American Heart Association (AHA), the European Heart Rhythm Association (EHRA), the Canadian Heart Rhythm Society (CHRS), and the International Society for Adult Congenital Heart Disease (ISACHD). *Can J Cardiol* 2014;30(10):e1-63.
432. Budts W, Börjesson M, Chessa M, et al. Physical activity in adolescents and adults with congenital heart defects: individualized exercise prescription. *Eur Heart J* 2013;34:3669-74.
433. Latchamsetty R, Yokokawa M, Morady F, et al. Multicenter outcomes for catheter ablation of idiopathic premature ventricular complexes. *JACC Clin Electrophysiol* 2015;3:116-23.
434. Yokokawa M, Good E, Crawford T, et al. Recovery from left ventricular dysfunction after ablation of frequent premature ventricular complexes. *Heart Rhythm* 2013;10(2):172-5.
435. Khasnis A, Jongnarangsin K, Abela G, Veerareddy S, Reddy V, Thakur R. Tachycardia-induced cardiomyopathy: a review of literature. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol* 2005; 28:710-21.
436. Fuster V, Ryden LE, Cannom DS, et al. ACC/AHA/ESC 2006 Guidelines for the Management of Patients with Atrial Fibrillation: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines and the European Society of Cardiology Committee for Practice Guidelines (Writing Committee to Revise the 2001 Guidelines for the Management of Patients With Atrial Fibrillation): developed in collaboration with the European Heart Rhythm Association and the Heart Rhythm Society. *Circulation* 2006;114:e257-354.
437. Lubitz SA, Benjamin EJ, Ellorin PT. Atrial fibrillation in congestive heart failure. *Heart Fail Clin* 2010;6(2):187-200.
438. Baman TS, Lange DC, Ilg KJ, et al. Relationship between burden of premature ventricular complexes and left ventricular function. *Heart Rhythm* 2010;7(7) :865-9.
439. Wilkoff BL, Cook JR, Epstein AE, et al; Dual Chamber and VVI Implantable Defibrillator Trial Investigators. Dual-chamber pacing or ventricular backup pacing in patients with an implantable defibrillator: the Dual Chamber and VVI Implantable Defibrillator (DAVID) Trial. *JAMA* 2002;288:3115-23.
440. Wilkoff BL, Kudenchuk PJ, Buxton AE, et al; DAVID II Investigators. The DAVID (Dual Chamber and VVI Implantable Defibrillator) II trial. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2009;53:872-80.
441. Curtis AB, Worley SJ, Chung ES, Li P, Christman SA, St John Sutton M. Improvement in Clinical Outcomes With Biventricular Versus Right Ventricular Pacing: The BLOCK HF Study. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2016;67(18):2148-57.
442. Shakir DK, Rasul KI. Chemotherapy induced cardiomyopathy: pathogenesis, monitoring and management. *J Clin Med Res* 2009;1(1):8-12.
443. Albini A, Pennesi G, Donatelli F, Cammarota R, De Flora S, Noonan DM. Cardiotoxicity of anticancer drugs: the need for cardio-oncology and cardio-oncological prevention. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2010;102(1):14-25.
444. Tan C, Tasaka H, Yu KP, Murphy ML, Karnofsky DA. Daunomycin, an antitumor antibiotics in the treatment of neoplastic disease. Clinical evaluation and special reference to childhood leukemia. *Cancer* 1967;20:333-53.
445. Swain SM, Whaley FS, Ewer MS. Congestive heart failure in patients treated with doxorubicin: a retrospective analysis of three trials. *Cancer* 2003;97:2869-79.
446. Seidman A, Hudis C, Pierri MK, et al. Cardiac dysfunction in the trastuzumab clinical trials experience. *J Clin Oncol* 2002;20:1215-21.
447. Felker GM, Thompson RE, Hare JM, et al. Underlying causes and long term survival in patients with initially unexplained cardiomyopathy. *NEJM* 2000;342:1077-84.
448. Vandercruys E, Mondelaers V, De Wold D, Benoit Y, Suys B. Late cardiotoxicity after low dose of anthracyclines therapy for acute lymphoblastic leukemia in childhood. *J Cancer Surviv* 2012;6:95-101.
449. Gottdiener JS, Appelbaum FR, Ferrans VJ, Deisseroth A, Ziegler J. Cardiotoxicity associated with high dose cyclophosphamide therapy. *Arch Intern Med* 1981;141:758-63.
450. Quezad ZM, Wilson WH, Cunnion RE, et al. High dose ifosfamide is associated with severe reversible cardiac dysfunction. *Ann Intern Med* 1993;118:31-6.
451. Slamon DJ, Leyland-Jones B, Shak S, et al. Use of chemotherapy plus monoclonal antibody against HER2 or metastatic breast cancer that overexpresses HER2. *NEJM* 2001;344:783-92.
452. Bird BR, Swain SM. Cardiac toxicity in breast cancer survivors: a review of potential cardiac problems. *Clin Cancer Res* 2008;14:14-24.
453. Hudis CA. Trastuzumab-mechanism of action and use in clinical practice. *NEJM* 2007;357:39-51.
454. Keefe DL. Trastuzumab-associated cardiotoxicity. *Cancer* 2002;95:1592-600.
455. Perez EA, Rodeheffer R. Clinical cardiac tolerability of trastuzumab. *J Clin Oncol* 2004;22:322-9.
456. Ewer MS, Voolteich MT, Durand JB, et al. Reversibility of trastuzumab-repeated cardiotoxicity: new insights based on clinical course and response to medical treatment. *J Clin Oncol* 2005;23:7820-6.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

457. Chintalgattu V, Ai D, Langley RR, et al. Cardiomyocyte PDGFR-beta signaling is an essential component of the mouse cardiac response to load induced stress. *J Clin Invest* 2010;120:472-84.
458. Chen MH, Kerkela R, Force T. Mechanism of cardiac dysfunction associated with tyrosine kinase inhibitor cancer therapeutics. *Circ* 2008;118:84-95.
459. Uraizee I, Cheng S, Moleshi J. Reversible cardiomyopathy associated with sunitinib and sorafenib. *NEJM* 2011;365:1649-50.
460. Grandin EW, Ky B, Cornell RF, Carver J, Lenihan DJ. Patterns of cardiac toxicity associated with irreversible proteasome inhibition in the treatment of multiple myeloma. *J Card Fail* 2015;21:138-44.
461. Braveman AC, Antin JH, Plappert MT, Plappert MT, Cook EF, Lee RT. Cyclophosphamide cardiotoxicity in bone marrow transplantation: a prospective evaluation of new dosing regimens. *J Clin Oncol* 1991;9:1215-23.
462. Cardinale D, Sandri MT, Colombo A, et al. Prognostic value of Troponin I in cardiac risk stratification of cancer patients undergoing high dose chemotherapy. *Circ* 2004;109:2749-54.
463. Cardinale D, Sandri MT, Martinoni A, et al. Myocardial injury revealed by plasma troponin I in breast cancer treated with high dose chemotherapy. *Ann Oncol* 2002;13:710-5.
464. Plana JC, Galderisi M, Barac A, et al. Expert consensus for multimodality imaging evaluation of adult patients during and after cancer therapy: a report from the American Society of Echocardiography and the European Association of Cardiovascular Imaging. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr* 2014;27(9):911-39.
465. Armenian SH, Lacchetti C, Barac A, et al. Prevention and monitoring of cardiac dysfunction in survivors of adult cancer: American Society of Clinical Oncology Clinical Practice Guidelines. *J Clin Oncol* 2017;35:893-911.
466. Thavendiranathan P, Grant AD, Negishi T, Plana JC, Popović ZB, Marwick TH. Reproducibility of echocardiography techniques for sequential assessment of left ventricular ejection fraction and volumes: application to patients undergoing cancer chemotherapy. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2013;61(1):77-84.
467. Sawaya H, Sebag IA, Plana JC, et al. Assessment of echocardiography and biomarkers for extended prediction of cardiotoxicity in patients treated with anthracyclines, taxanes and trastuzumab. *Circ Cardiovasc Imaging* 2012;5(5):596-603.
468. Negishi K, Negishi T, Hare JL, Haluska BA, Plana JC, Marwick TH. Independent and incremental value of deformation indices for prediction of trastuzumab-induced cardiotoxicity. *J Am Soc Echocardiogr* 2013;26(5):493-8.
469. Thavendiranathan P, Poulin F, Lim KD, Plana JC, Woo A, Marwick TH. Use of myocardial strain imaging by echocardiography for the early detection of cardiotoxicity in patients during and after cancer chemotherapy: a systemic review. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2014;63(25 Pt A):2751-68.
470. Braunwald E. Biomarkers in heart failure. *NEJM* 2008;358:2148-59.
471. Ky B, French B, Levy WC, et al. Multiple biomarkers for risk prediction in chronic heart failure. *Circ Heart Fail* 2012;5(2):183-90.
472. Cardinale D, Colombo A, Sandri MT, et al. Prevention of high-dose chemotherapy-induced cardiotoxicity in high-risk patients by angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibition. *Circulation* 2006;114(23):2474-81.
473. Gulati G, Heck SL, Ree AH, et al: Prevention of cardiac dysfunction during adjuvant breast cancer therapy (PRADA): A 2 x 2 factorial, randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind clinical trial of candesartan and metoprolol. *Eur Heart J* 2016;37:1671-80.
474. Boekhout AH, Gietema JA, Milojkovic Kerklau B, et al: Angiotensin II-receptor inhibition with candesartan to prevent trastuzumab-related cardiotoxic effects in patients with early breast cancer: A randomized clinical trial. *JAMA Oncol* 2016; 2:1030-7.
475. Cardinale D, Colombo A, Bacchiani G, et al: Early detection of anthracycline cardiotoxicity and improvement with heart failure therapy. *Circulation* 2015;131:1981-8.
476. Goldhar HA, Yan AT, Ko DT, et al: The temporal risk of heart failure associated with adjuvant trastuzumab in breast cancer patients: A population study. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2015;08(1).pii:djv301.
477. Tromp J, Jay WT, Ouwerkerk W, et al for ASIAN-HF authors. Correction: Multimorbidity in patients with heart failure from 11 Asian regions: a prospective cohort study using the ASIAN-HF registry. *PLoS Med* 2018;15(5):e1002583.
478. Heywood JT, Fonarow GC, Costanzo MR, et al. High prevalence of renal dysfunction and its impact on outcome in 118,465 patients hospitalized with acute decompensated heart failure: a report from the ADHERE database. *J Card Fail* 2007;13:422-30.
479. Ponikowski P, Voors AA, Anke SD, et al; ESC Scientific Document Group 2016. ESC Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Treatment of Acute and Chronic Heart Failure: The Task Force for the Diagnosis and Treatment of Acute and Chronic Heart Failure of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC) developed with the special contribution of the Heart Failure Association (HFA) of the ESC. *Eur J Heart Fail* 2016;18(8):891-975.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

480. Forman DE, Butler J, Wang Y, et al. Incidence, predictors at admission, and impact of worsening renal function among patients hospitalized with heart failure. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2004;43(1):61-7.
481. Mullens W, Abrahams Z, Francis GS, et al. Importance of venous congestion for worsening of renal function in advanced decompensated heart failure. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2009;53:589-96.
482. Smith GL, Lichtman JH, Bracken MB, et al. Renal impairment and outcomes in heart failure: systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2006;47(10):1987-96.
483. Nunez J, Garcia S, Nunez E, et al. Early serum creatinine changes and outcomes in patients admitted for acute heart failure: the cardio-renal syndrome revisited. *Eur Heart J Acute Cardiovasc Care* 2017;6(5):430-40.
484. Testani JM, Kimmel SE, Dries DL, Coca SG. Prognostic importance of early worsening renal function following initiation of angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor therapy in patients with cardiac dysfunction. *Circ Heart Fail* 2011;4(6):685-91.
485. Metra M, Davison B, Bettari L, et al. Is worsening renal function an ominous prognostic sign in patients with acute heart failure? The role of congestion and its interaction with renal function. *Circ Heart Fail* 2012;5:54-62.
486. Greene SJ, Gheorghiu M, Vaduganathan M, et al. Hemoconcentration, renal function, and post-discharge outcomes among patients hospitalized for heart failure with reduced ejection fraction: insights from the EVEREST trial. *Eur J Heart Fail* 2013;15:1401-11.
487. Testani JM, Chen J, McCauley BD, Kimmel SE, Shannon RP. Potential effects of aggressive decongestion during the treatment of decompensated heart failure on renal function and survival. *Circulation* 2010;122:265-72.
488. Ezekowitz JA, O'Meara E, McDonald AM, et al. 2017 Comprehensive Update of the Canadian Cardiovascular Society Guidelines for the Management of Heart Failure. *Can J Cardiol* 2017;33:1342-433.
489. Felker GM, Lee KL, Bull DA, et al. Diuretic strategies in patients with acute decompensated heart failure. *N Engl J Med* 2011;364:797-805.
490. Bhandari S, Ives N, Brettell EA, et al. Multicentre randomized controlled trial of angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor/angiotensin receptor blocker withdrawal in advanced renal disease: the STOP-ACEi trial. *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 2016;31(2):255-61.
491. Constantino MR, Ronco C, Abraham WT, et al. Extracorporeal ultrafiltration for fluid overload in heart failure: current status and prospects for further research. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2017;69(19):2428-45.
492. Applefeld MM, Newman KA, Sutton FJ, et al. Outpatient dobutamine and dopamine infusions in the management of chronic heart failure. Clinical experience in 21 patients. *Am Heart J* 1987;114:589-95.
493. Bart BA, Goldsmith SR, Lee KL, et al for the Heart Failure Clinical Research Network. Ultrafiltration in decompensated heart failure with cardiorenal syndrome. *N Engl J Med* 2012;367:2296-304.
494. Stehlik J, Edwards LB, Kucheryavaya AY, et al. The Registry of the International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation: Twenty-eighth Adult Heart Transplant Report - 2012. *J Heart Lung Transpl* 2012;31:10:1052-64.
495. Kilic A, Weiss ES, George TJ, et al. What predicts long-term survival after heart transplantation? An analysis of 9,400 ten-year survivors. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2012;93:3:699-704.
496. Estep JD, Starling RC, Horstmanshof DA, et al; ROADMAP Study Investigators. Risk assessment and comparative effectiveness of left ventricular assist device and medical management in ambulatory heart failure patients: Results from the ROADMAP study. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2015;66:1747-61.
497. Pagani FD, Milano CA, Tatoes AJ, et al. HeartWare HVAD for the treatment of patients with advanced heart failure ineligible for cardiac transplantation: results of the ENDURANCE destination therapy trial. *J Heart Lung Transplant* 2015;34:S9.
498. Health Quality Ontario. Left ventricular assist devices for destination therapy: a health technology assessment. *Ont Health Technol Assess Ser* 2016;16(3):1-60.
499. Ponikowski P, Voors AA, Anker SD, et al. The Task Force for the Diagnosis and Treatment of Acute and Chronic Heart Failure of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC). 2016 ESC Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Treatment of Acute and Chronic Heart Failure. *Eur Heart J* 2016;37:2129-200.
500. Jaarsma T, Beattie JM, Ryder M, et al for the Advanced Heart Failure Study Group of the HFA of the ESC. Palliative care in heart failure: a position statement from the palliative care workshop of the Heart Failure Association of the European Society of Cardiology. *Eur J Heart Fail* 2009;11:433-43.
501. Whellan DJ, Goodlin SJ, Dickinson MG, et al for Quality of Care Committee, Heart Failure Society of America. End-of-life care in patients with heart failure. *J Card Fail* 2013;20:121-34.
502. Gillilan R, Puchalski C. Spiritual issues in heart failure. In: *Supportive Care in Heart Failure*, Beattie J, Goodlin S (Eds), Oxford University Press, Oxford 2008. p.299.
503. McAlister FA, Stewart S, Ferrua S, McMurray JJ. Multidisciplinary strategies for the management of heart failure patients at high risk for admission: a systematic review of randomized trials. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2004;44:810-19.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

504. Feltner C, Jones CD, Cené CW, et al. Transitional care interventions to prevent readmissions for persons with heart failure: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ann Intern Med* 2014;160:774-84.
505. Hauptman PJ, Rich MW, Heidenreich PA, et al; Heart Failure Society of America. The Heart Failure Clinic: a consensus statement of the Heart Failure Society of America. *J Card Fail* 2008;14:801-15.
506. Stewart S, Carrington MJ, Marwick TH, et al. The WHICH trial: Impact of home versus clinic-based management of chronic heart failure. *JACC* 2012;60(14):1239-48.
507. Gustafsson F, J. Arnold MO. Heart failure clinics and outpatient management: review of the evidence and call for quality assurance. *Eur Heart J* 2004;25:1596-1604.
508. The Health Foundation. Kim Sutherland. Bridging the quality gap: Heart failure. London. March 2010.
509. Ministry of Health Malaysia (Pharmacy Practice and Development Division). Protocol Medication Therapy Adherence Clinic (MTAC): Heart Failure 2018, 1st Ed.
510. Soran O. A new treatment modality in heart failure enhanced external counterpulsation (EECP). *Cardiol Rev* 2004;12:15-20.
511. Tecson KM, Silver MA, Brune SD, et al. Impact of EECP on heart failure rehospitalization in patients with ischemic cardiomyopathy. *Am J Cardiol* 2016;117:901-5.
512. Lawson WE, Kennard ED, Holubkov R, et al; IEPR investigators. Benefit and safety of enhanced external counterpulsation in treating coronary artery disease patients with a history of congestive heart failure. *Cardiology* 2001;96:78-84.
513. McKenna C, McDaid C, Suekarran S, et al. Enhanced external counterpulsation for treatment of stable angina and heart failure: a systemic review and economic analysis. *Health Tech Assessment* 2009;13(24):iii-iv, ix-xi, 1-90.
514. Fernandez-Aviles F, Sanz-Ruiz R, Climent AM, et al for TACTICS (Transnational Alliance for Regenerative Therapies in Cardiovascular Syndromes) Writing Group; Authors/Task Force Members. Chairpersons; Basic Research Subcommittee; Translational Research Subcommittee; Challenges of Cardiovascular Regenerative Medicine Subcommittee; Tissue Engineering Subcommittee; Delivery, Navigation, Tracking and Assessment Subcommittee; Clinical Trials Subcommittee; Regulatory and funding strategies subcommittee; Delivery, Navigation, Tracking and Assessment Subcommittee. Global position paper on cardiovascular regenerative medicine. *Eur Heart J* 2017;38:2532-46.
515. Tavazzi L, Maggioni AP, Marchioli R, et al; GISSI-HF Investigators. Effect of n3 polyunsaturated fatty acids in patients with chronic heart failure (the GISSI-HF Trial): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet* 2008;372:1223-30.
516. Siscovick DS, Barringer TA, Fretts AM, et al. Omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acid (fish oil) supplementation and the prevention of cardiovascular disease. A Science Advisory From the American Heart Association. *Circulation* 2017;135(15):e867-84.
517. Madmani ME, Yusuf Solaiman A, Tamr Agha K, et al. Coenzyme Q10 for heart failure. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2014;6:CD008684.
518. Ren X, Li Y, Yang X, et al. The effects of Tai Chi training in patients with heart failure: a systemic review and meta-analysis. *Front Physiol* 2017;8:989.
519. Gu Q, Wu SJ, Zheng Y, et al. Tai Chi exercise for patients with chronic heart failure. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil* 2017;96(10):706-16.
520. Gomes-Neto M, Sousa Rodrigues-Jr E, Monteiro Silva-Jr W, Carvalho VO. Effects of yoga in patients with chronic heart failure: a meta-analysis. *Arq Bras Cardiol* 2014; 103(5):433-9.
521. Lopes CP, Danzmann LC, Moraes RS, et al. Yoga and breathing technique training in patients with heart failure and preserved ejection fraction: study protocol for a randomized clinical trial. *Trials* 2018;19:405.
522. Fonarow GC, Albert NM, Curtis AB, et al. Improving evidence-based care for heart failure in outpatient cardiology practices: primary results of the Registry to Improve the Use of Evidence-Based Heart Failure Therapies in the Outpatient Setting (IMPROVE HF). *Circulation* 2010;122:585-96.
523. Bonow RO, Ganiats TG, Beam CT, et al. ACCF/AHA/AMA-PCPI 2011 performance measures for adults with heart failure: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Performance Measures and the American Medical Association-Physician Consortium for Performance Improvement. *Circulation* 2012;125:2382-401.
524. Patel J, Sandhu A, Parizo J, Moayedi Y, Fonarow GC, Heidenreich PA. Validity of performance and outcome. Measures for heart failure. *Circ Heart Fail* 2018;11:e005035.

PART 2

Management of Heart Failure in Paediatrics

13. HEART FAILURE IN THE PAEDIATRIC POPULATION**TABLE OF CONTENTS****Pages**

	Glossary	145
13.1	Introduction	146
13.2	Definition	146
13.3	Aetiology	146
13.4	Clinical Presentation	147
13.5	Diagnosis	147
13.6	Management	148
13.7	Prognosis	151
	Tables 18-24	152
	References	158

GLOSSARY

Abbreviation	Description
DACE-I	Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors
ALCAPA	Anomalous left coronary artery to pulmonary artery
AP window	Aortopulmonary window
AS	Aortic stenosis
AVSD	Atrioventricular septal defect
CHD	Congenital heart disease
CXR	Chest X-ray
CoA	Coarctation of aorta
ECG	Electrocardiogram
HF	Heart Failure
HLHS	Hypoplastic left heart syndrome
MRI	Magnetic resonance imaging
PBF	Pulmonary blood flow
PDA	Patent ductus arteriosus
PHF	Paediatric heart failure
PS	Pulmonary stenosis
TGA	Transposition great arteries
VSD	Ventricular septal defect

13.1 Introduction

Paediatric heart failure (PHF) is a complex syndrome with heterogeneous aetiology and presentation.¹ It is an uncommon condition with a reported incidence of 0.87 to 7.4 per 100,000 population.² It, however, causes significant morbidity and mortality.

Unlike adults with HF, PHF is commonly due to congenital heart disease (CHD) or cardiomyopathies. However, the general principles of management are similar to those in adults, except that there is a lack of randomised clinical trials and international guidelines for PHF.³

13.2 Definition

There are various definitions of PHF.^{1,4,5} PHF can be defined as

- “The failure of the heart to supply blood to either systemic or pulmonary circulation at an appropriate rate of flow, or to receive venous return at an appropriate filling pressure, resulting in adverse effects on the heart, the circulation, and the patient”⁴ or
- “A clinical and pathophysiologic syndrome that results from ventricular dysfunction, volume or pressure overload, alone or in combination that leads to characteristic signs and symptoms, and is associated with circulatory, neurohormonal and molecular abnormalities”.⁵

13.3 Aetiology

In children, cardiac failure is most often due to CHDs and cardiomyopathies.⁶ (Table 18, Page 152).

Common etiologies are:

- At birth - foetal cardiomyopathies, foetal arrhythmias or non-cardiac conditions (i.e., perinatal asphyxia, sepsis, hypoglycaemia, and hypocalcaemia).
- Within the first week of life - duct dependent systemic circulation, i.e. closure or restriction of ductus arteriosus leading to a severe reduction of end-organ perfusion in patients with critical aortic stenosis (AS), aortic coarctation (CoA), and hypoplastic left heart syndrome (HLHS).
- Within the first year of life - left to right shunts (i.e. large ventricular septal defect (VSD), patent ductus arteriosus (PDA), atrioventricular septal defect (AVSD), aortopulmonary window (AP window), or cyanotic CHD with non-protective pulmonary blood flow (i.e. transposition great arteries with VSD, truncus arteriosus). In both these conditions, pulmonary blood flow (PBF) progressively increases with the fall of pulmonary vascular resistance.
- Children and adolescence (1-18 years of age) - more often due to rheumatic carditis, myocarditis or cardiomyopathies other than congenital heart disease.

13.4 Clinical Presentation

The clinical presentation of HF varies with age. It may present at birth (because of foetal disease) or can develop at any stage of childhood. Table 19, Page 153 summarises the clinical presentation of paediatric HF according to the different age groups.

The clinical presentation of HF in neonates and infants are non-specific, and cardiac murmurs may be absent or very soft. Absence of femoral pulse or presence of radio-femoral delay may suggest coarctation of aorta.

Hence, it is very important to exclude underlying cardiac disease in younger infants with feeding difficulties, respiratory distress, and growth failure. Furthermore, features of HF in adults such as ankle oedema are rarely seen in infants and children.

The severity of HF is staged based on modified Ross classification as shown in Table 20, Page 153. Briefly, class 1 is absence of symptoms and class 4 is severe symptoms of HF.

Acute heart failure in children may present with hypotension or tachycardia with narrow pulse pressure, cool extremities, and irritable or decreased consciousness. It is usually seen in cardiomyopathies, myocarditis, and left ventricular outflow tract obstructions such as critical/severe aortic stenosis or coarctation of aorta.

13.5 Diagnosis

PHF is a clinical diagnosis, and any child presenting with symptoms and signs of HF needs assessment to establish the diagnosis and haemodynamic status.⁷ The initial steps of management are non-invasive investigations to look for the aetiology and assess the severity of HF.

These include blood investigations, electrocardiogram (ECG), chest radiograph, echocardiogram. Occasionally, other investigations such as cardiac catheterisation, cardiac magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) or CT scan may be necessary.

13.5.1 Essential investigations (Tables 21 and 22, Pages 154 and 155)

Initial therapy to reduce pulmonary congestion or to improve perfusion should not be delayed while waiting for the results of the investigations.

Chest X-ray (CXR)

I,C

CXR is indicated as the first-line investigation in all children with suspected HF.

Features to look for are:

- Size of the heart (small, normal or, large) -
 - In the neonate and small infant, the thymic shadow may be confused as cardiomegaly. In these cases, a lateral CXR may be helpful.
 - The incidental finding of cardiomegaly in asymptomatic infants would warrant further investigations with an echocardiogram.
- Contours of the heart
- Pulmonary vascularity (increase, normal, and decrease)
- Signs of fluid overload such as cardiomegaly, septal lines (or Kerley B lines), and pleural effusions.

I,C

ECG

- The ECG is always abnormal in children with HF. However, the findings are generally non-specific - e.g. sinus tachycardia and left ventricular hypertrophy.
- ECG may be diagnostic in HF secondary to tachy - or bradyarrhythmias (e.g. supraventricular tachycardia, atrial ectopic tachycardia, heart block).
- A continuous ECG monitoring (Holter) is indicated in any patient presenting with unexplained dilated cardiomyopathy for possible tachycardia-induced cardiomyopathy.

2D-echocardiogram

This will provide information on:

- Structural cardiac defects (volume or pressure overload),
- Chamber sizes (dilated left atrium and ventricle in left to right shunt), and
- Cardiac function (a poor cardiac function with dilated left ventricle in myocarditis or dilated cardiomyopathies).

13.6 Management

The therapeutic approach should be tailored to the clinical status at presentation and the underlying cause of HF. (Table 23, Page 156).

Treatment goals are:

- Treat the underlying problem, i.e., corrective surgery/intervention in a child with significant left-right lesions,

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

- Minimise morbidity and mortality, and
- Improve functional status and quality of life.

Children with decompensated HF are preferably managed in an intensive care unit for stabilisation.

General principles of management include:

- Oxygen therapy in acute HF.
- Correcting acidosis, hypoglycaemia, and anaemia.
- Correcting electrolyte disturbances.
- Treating respiratory infections.
- Nasogastric tube feeding in children with poor weight gain.
- Treating gastroesophageal reflux.
- Adequate nutritional intake.
- Fluids should be carefully administered - symptoms may be related to fluid overload, under perfusion or both. Therefore, the goal of therapy is to return the patient to a euvolemic state with good perfusion.
- Anaemia should be treated cautiously. If indicated, blood transfusion should be given in small volumes (5-10ml/kg) to avoid worsening symptoms.

Following stabilisation, efforts should be made to identify and treat the underlying cause. All treatable structural heart defects should have corrective surgery and/or interventional therapy as early as possible.

In cases of HF due to cardiomyopathy or myocarditis, long-term medical therapy is necessary.

Common medications include: (Table 24, Page 157)

- Loop diuretics - frusemide
 - Indicated in the treatment of HF due to volume overload.
 - In decompensated HF, a slow intravenous infusion of frusemide would avoid worsening the hypotension as compared to intermittent bolus injections.⁸
 - The addition of spironolactone (potassium sparing) avoids the need for potassium supplements. It has the additional beneficial effect of attenuating the development of aldosterone-induced myocardial fibrosis and catecholamine release.⁹
 - In euvolemic patients, diuretics should be used judiciously.

I,C

- **Ila,B** Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (ACE-I)
 - Captopril is commonly used in infants.^{4,6}
 - In those more than 2 years of age, enalapril can also be used.^{4,6}
 - Close monitoring of renal function is required to avoid renal impairment particularly in the neonate and small infant.
- **β-blockers**
 - Indicated in the treatment of HF with moderate to severe systolic left ventricular dysfunction.
- **Ila,B** In dilated cardiomyopathy, carvedilol shall be started together with diuretics and ACE-I.^{10,11} Start a low dose and gradually titrate up to the targeted dose.
- **Phosphodiesterase type III inhibitor (Milrinone)^{12,13}**
 - Milrinone is indicated for the prevention of low cardiac output syndrome (poor perfusion, decreased urine output, cool extremities) after cardiac surgery.^{12,13}
- **Ila,B** It is also indicated in decompensated HF with a low cardiac output syndrome.^{4,13}
 - It is to be used cautiously in the presence of hypotension.
- **Digoxin**
 - Indicated in symptomatic patients with left and/or right ventricular systolic dysfunction but is rarely used at present.
 - It has a narrow therapeutic index, hence needs close monitoring for toxicity.
- **Inotropes**
 - Dopamine and dobutamine have been shown to be effective inotropes and vasopressors in neonates, infants, and children with circulatory failure.
 - However, these inotropes may also cause tachycardia and other tachyarrhythmias and should be used cautiously.
- **Ilb,C** Corticosteroid and intravenous immunoglobulin in myocarditis
 - In children with acute HF due to suspected myocarditis, routine use of corticosteroid and intravenous immunoglobulin is not indicated due to lack of benefit.⁴

13.7 Prognosis

The outcome of infants and children with HF depends largely on the aetiology. When due to structural congenital defects, surgery and/or interventional treatment can be curative. In some patients, however, it may only be palliative with some improvement in clinical symptoms.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

Table 18: Causes of Paediatric Heart Failure

Type	Mechanisms	Example
Congenital heart disease	Left to right shunt (volume overload)	Large VSD, PDA, AVSD, AP window, and coronary fistula
	Outflow tract obstruction (pressure overload)	Severe or critical PS, AS or CoA
	Inflow obstruction	Cor triatriatum Pulmonary vein stenosis Mitral stenosis
	Complex CHD with non-protected pulmonary flow	TGA with large VSD Univentricular heart with no PS Truncus Arteriosus
	Anomalous pulmonary venous drainage	TAPVD
	Severe valvular regurgitation	Severe Ebstein anomaly, common AV valve regurgitation
	Coronary insufficiency (decreased O2 supply to cardiomyocyte)	ALCAPA
Acquired heart disease	Severe valvular regurgitation	Rheumatic carditis Infective endocarditis
Cardiomyopathies	Systolic dysfunction (low cardiac output)	Dilated cardiomyopathies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Familial • Metabolic disease • Post myocarditis • Neuromuscular Disease • Drug induce (Anthracycline)
	Pressure overload Decrease preload	Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Infant of diabetic mother • Noonan syndrome • Pompe disease
	Diastolic dysfunction (elevated pulmonary capillary pressure)	Restrictive cardiomyopathies <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Familial RCM
Arrhythmias	Low cardiac output	Supraventricular tachycardia
		Complete heart block
Infection	Myocardial dysfunction	Severe sepsis
Miscellaneous	High output	Severe anaemia
		Systemic arteriovenous malformation
		Thyrotoxicosis
	Myocardial ischaemia	Kawasaki disease
	Fluid Overload	Acute glomerulonephritis

ALCAPA, anomalous left coronary artery to pulmonary artery; AP, aortopulmonary; AVSD, atrioventricular septal defect; AS, aortic stenosis; CHD, congenital heart disease; CoA, coarctation of aorta; PDA, patent ductus arteriosus; PS, pulmonary stenosis; RCM, restrictive cardiomyopathy; TAPVD, total anomalous pulmonary venous drainage; TGA, transposition great arteries; VSD, ventricular septal defect.

Table 19: Clinical Presentation of Paediatric Heart Failure

Age group	Clinical presentation
Infants and young children	Difficulty in feeding (interrupted feeding, prolonged feeding time)
	Tachypnoea
	Diaphoresis
	Pallor
	Rarely with ascites, facial oedema, ankle swelling
Children and adolescence	Shortness of breath
	Dyspnoea
	Decrease effort tolerance
	Abdominal pain, nausea, and vomiting
	Rarely ankle oedema, ascites, chest pain, and palpitation

Table 20: Modified Ross Classification for Paediatric Heart Failure¹

Class	Age groups	Symptoms
I	All	Asymptomatic
II	Infant†	Mild tachypnoea or diaphoresis during feeding No growth failure or failure to thrive
	Older children‡	Dyspnoea on moderate exertion
III	Infants	Marked tachypnoea or diaphoresis during feeding Growth failure or failure to thrive
	Older children	Dyspnoea on mild or minimal exertion
IV	All	Tachypnoea, diaphoresis or respiratory distress at rest

†Infants refer to age 0-1 year.

‡Older children refer to age 1-10 years

¹Ross RD, Daniels SR, Schwartz DC, Hannon DW, Shukla R, Kaplan S. Plasma norepinephrine levels in infants and children with congestive heart failure. *Am J Cardiol* 1987;59:911-4.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

Table 21: The ECG, CXR, and 2d-Echocardiography and Possible Cardiac Diagnosis in Paediatric Heart Failure

4.1 ECG findings	Interpretation
LVH	Left to right shunt
RAD, RVH	Right sided lesion
T inversion and Q waves in inferolateral leads	ALCAPA
Bilateral atrial enlargement (bifid p and peak p)	RCM
Supraventricular tachycardia	Tachycardia-induced dilated cardiomyopathy
4.2 CXR findings	Interpretation
Left ventricular and atrial enlargement and pulmonary artery dilation	Left to right shunt
Right atrial and ventricular enlargement, pulmonary artery dilation	Right-sided lesion
Left ventricular enlargement, Rib notching	Bigger children with CoA
"Snowman" sign	Supracardiac TAPVD
Small heart with increase pulmonary vascular marking	Obstructed TAPVD
4.3 2d-echocardiography findings	Interpretation
Dilated LA and LV with a normal function	Left to right shunt
LVH +/- LV dysfunction	Left sided obstructive lesion
RVH +/- LV dysfunction	Right-sided obstructive lesion
Dilated LV with LV dysfunction	DCM, ALCAPA
Global IVS thickening	HOCM
Biatrial enlargement	RCM
Dilated RA and RV	Neonatal CoA
	TAPVD
	Pulmonary hypertension
	ASD (rarely cause symptomatic heart failure in infancy)
<p>ALCAPA, anomalous left coronary artery to pulmonary artery; AS, aortic stenosis; ASD, atrial septal defect; CoA, coarctation of aorta; CXR, Chest X-ray; DCM, dilated cardiomyopathy; ECG, electrocardiogram; HOCM, hypertrophy obstructive cardiomyopathy; IVS, interventricular septum; LA, left atrium; LV, left ventricle; LVH, left ventricular hypertrophy; PS, pulmonary stenosis; RA, right atrium; RAD, right axis deviation; RCM, restrictive cardiomyopathy; RV, right ventricular; RVH, right ventricular hypertrophy; TAPVD, total anomalous pulmonary venous drainage.</p>	

Table 22: Other Tests for Heart Failure in Children

Test	Indication and findings
FBC	Low haemoglobin (anaemia) may cause or aggravate HF.
Electrolyte	Prolong use of diuretic may cause low potassium or chloride.
Renal profile	Renal impairment may result from medication used for treatment of HF (diuretic or ACE inhibitor) particularly in neonate and small infant.
Liver function test	In acute HF, raised liver enzyme is commonly noted due to liver congestion particularly in infant and children with right-sided volume and pressure overload.
Natriuretic peptides	BNP or NT-proBNP levels are useful in distinguishing HF from respiratory or other non-cardiac disease.
Lactate	Useful in patients with acute decompensated HF, helps guide management.
Arterial blood gases	In acute stage for oxygen (hypoxia) and metabolic acidosis.
Thyroid function test	If clinically indicated to exclude thyrotoxicosis.
Cardiac troponins	Useful in HF i.e. increase troponin T in acute myocarditis and increase troponin I in dilated cardiomyopathy.
Metabolic and genetic testing	Indicated in children with unexplained cardiomyopathy. Should be based on clinical presentation and a discussion with genetic and/or metabolic specialist.
Viral studies	Indicated in infant and children with suspected acute myocarditis. Viral studies includes enterovirus, adenovirus, parvovirus, hepatitis C, and the herpes group viruses (EBV, CMV, HSV, HHV6/7, VZV) from blood, stool, and/or nasopharyngeal samples as appropriate.
Endomyocardial biopsy	Useful in suspected acute myocarditis, but the yield is low. Not advisable in non-stable patients and infant less than 10kg.
Cardia MRI/CT scan	Shall be guided by echocardiogram. Useful in diagnosis of primary CMs and myocarditis, complex CHD or rare extracardiac malformation i.e. vascular ring and sling, pulmonary sequestration, abdominal CoA.
Cardiac catheterisation	Shall be guided by echocardiogram. Indicated for complex CHD. Assessment of pulmonary pressure and haemodynamic.

ACE, angiotensin-converting enzyme; BNP, B-type natriuretic peptide; CHD, congenital heart disease; CMV, cytomegalovirus; CoA, coarctation of aorta; CT, computerised tomography; EBV, Ebsteins Barr virus; FBC, full blood count; HSV, herpes simplex virus; HF, heart failure; MRI, magnetic resonance imaging; NT-proBNP, N-terminal pro b-type natriuretic peptide; VZV, varicella zoster virus

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

Table 23: Summary of Principles of Management of Paediatric Heart Failure by Aetiology/Pathophysiology

Type of heart failure	Suggested treatment and medication [†]	Comments
Volume overload	Furosemide, spironolactone, and/or ACE-I. Corrective surgery or intervention.	Corrective surgery or intervention should be considered early in an infant with poor weight gain and recurrent chest infection.
Pressure overload ^{††}	Supportive care in the acute stage. Urgent corrective surgery or intervention to release the obstruction.	Inotropes shall be used cautiously, may worsen HF. Avoid ACE-I in CoA.
Single ventricle/ complex CHD with no pulmonary stenosis	Surgical repair Furosemide, spironolactone, and/or ACE-I	Unnecessary use of O2 supplement, may worsen HF.
ALCAPA ^{††}	Supportive care in the acute stage. Furosemide, spironolactone, and ACE-I Corrective surgery	May mimic left-sided obstructive lesion In the acute stage: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● May need a slow infusion of furosemide and inotrope. ● Add each medication in a stepwise manner.
Dilated cardiomyopathy ^{††}	Furosemide, spironolactone, and ACE-I, β-blocker	In the acute stage: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● May need a slow infusion of furosemide and inotrope. ● Add each medication in a stepwise manner. ● β-blocker after stabilisation.
Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy	β-blocker Surgical resection	In the acute stage: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Inotropes shall be used cautiously, may worsen HF.
Restrictive cardiomyopathies	Diuretic, β-blocker and ACE-I	● To administer medications cautiously. Associated with poor prognosis.
Tachyarrhythmias	Antiarrhythmias to control SVT. β-blocker	In the acute stage: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Inotropes shall be used cautiously, may worsen arrhythmias.
Complete heart block	Temporary pacing or intravenous isoprenaline in the acute stage.	Permanent pacing
Acute myocarditis ^{††}	Supportive care in the acute stage. Furosemide, spironolactone, and ACE-I	In the acute stage: May need a slow infusion of furosemide and inotrope Add each medication in a stepwise manner
Rheumatic carditis	Steroids in severe carditis. Furosemide, spironolactone, and ACE-I	As steroids are being weaned off, aspirin is added. Early valve repair in severe valvular regurgitation.
Infective endocarditis	Supportive care in the acute stage Appropriate antibiotic Furosemide, spironolactone, and ACE-I	Early valve repair in severe . valvular regurgitation

[†] No. of medication used is depending on clinical response

^{††} Commonly associated with ventricular dysfunction

ACE-I, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor; ALCAPA, anomalous left coronary artery to pulmonary artery; CHD, congenital heart disease; CoA, coarctation of aorta; SVT, supraventricular tachycardia.

MANAGEMENT OF HEART FAILURE 2019

4th Edition

Table 24: Common Drugs Used in Paediatric Heart Failure

Medication	Standard dose†	Indication and comments
Diuretics		
Furosemide	Oral 0.5-1mg/kg 6-24H Infusion 0.1-1mg/kg/hr.	A slow intravenous infusion may be required in children with impaired or depressed cardiac function.
Spironolactone*	Oral 0-10kg: 6.25mg 12H 11-20kg: 12.5mg 12H 21-40kg: 25mg 12H > 40kg: 25mg 8H	Potassium sparing, used in combination with furosemide.
ACE-I		
Captopril	Oral 0.1mg/kg 8H up to max 2mg/kg 8H	Introduce slowly and monitor renal function. Monitor for hypotension.
Enalapril	Oral 0.1 mg/kg daily up to max 0.5mg/kg 12H	Only for children more than 2 years of age.
β-blocker		
Propranolol	Oral 0.2-0.5mg/kg 6-8H up to max 1.5mg/kg 6-8H	SVT, HOCM
Metoprolol	Oral 1-2mg/kg 6-12H	SVT, HOCM, DCM
Carvedilol	Oral 0.1mg/kg 12H, up to max 0.5-0.8mg/kg 12H	Stable DCM in addition of diuretics and ACE-I Increase gradually, 0.1mg/kg every 1-2 week to max dose.
Milrinone	Infusion 75mcg/kg over 1 hour, then 0.5-0.75mcg/kg/min	For low cardiac output syndrome.
Digoxin	3-5mcg/kg 12H	Rarely used except in tachyarrhythmia and ventricular dysfunction. Monitor the digoxin level.
ACE-I, angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors; HOCM, hypertrophy cardiomyopathy; SVT, supraventricular tachycardia. †Adapted from Drug Doses Frank Shann 17th edition		

REFERENCES

1. Hsu DT, Pearson GD. Heart failure in children part I: History, etiology, and pathophysiology. *Circ Hear Fail* 2009;2(1):63-70.
2. Shaddy RE, George AT, Jaecklin T, et al. Systematic literature review on the incidence and prevalence of heart failure in children and adolescents. *Pediatr Cardiol* 2018;39:415-36.
3. Colan SD. Review of the International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation Practice Guidelines for Management of Heart Failure in Children. *Cardiol Young* 2015;25(S2):154-9.
4. Kantor PF, Loughheed J, Dancea A, et al. Presentation, diagnosis, and medical management of heart failure in children: Canadian Cardiovascular Society Guidelines. *Can J Cardiol* 2013;29(12):1535-52.
5. Kirk R, Dipchand AI, Rosenthal DN, et al. The International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation Guidelines for the Management of Pediatric Heart Failure: Executive summary. *J Heart Lung Transplant* 2014;33(9):888-909.
6. Das BB. Current state of pediatric heart failure. *Children* 2018;5(7): pii: E88
7. Masarone D, Valente F, Rubino M, et al. Pediatric Heart Failure: A Practical Guide to Diagnosis and Management. *Pediatrics & Neonatology* 2017;58:303-12.
8. Stough WG, O'Connor CM, Gheorghide M. Overview of current noninodilator therapies for acute heart failure syndromes. *Am J Cardiol* 2005;96(6A):41G-6G.
9. Feingold B, Mahle WT, Auerbach S, et al. Management of cardiac involvement associated with neuromuscular diseases: A scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation* 2017;136(13):e200-31.
10. Huang M, Zhang X, Chen S, et al. The effect of carvedilol treatment on chronic heart failure in pediatric patients with dilated cardiomyopathy: A prospective, randomized-controlled study. *Pediatr Cardiol* 2013;34(3):680-5.
11. Shaddy RE, Boucek MM, Hsu DT, et al. Carvedilol for children and adolescents with heart failure: A randomized controlled trial. *J Am Med Assoc* 2007;298(10):1171-9.
12. Hoffman TM, Wemovsky G, Atz AM, et al. Efficacy and safety of milrinone in preventing low cardiac output syndrome in infants and children after corrective surgery for congenital heart disease. *Circulation* 2003;107(7):996-1002.
13. Bishara T, Seto WTW, Trope A, Parshuram CS. Use of milrinone in critically ill children. *Can J Hosp Pharm* 2010;63(6):420-8.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The committee would like to thank the following for all their assistance:

- MAHTaS Unit, Division of Ministry of Health.
- Panel of experts who reviewed the draft.

DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

The panel members have no potential conflict of interest to disclose.

SOURCES OF FUNDING

This CPG was made possible by an educational grant from Novartis Corporation (Malaysia) Sdn. Bhd. and National Heart Association of Malaysia. Views and interests of the funding body have not influenced the final recommendations.

